



FortiOS - AWS Administration Guide

Version 6.4



FORTINET DOCUMENT LIBRARY

https://docs.fortinet.com

FORTINET VIDEO GUIDE https://video.fortinet.com

FORTINET BLOG https://blog.fortinet.com

CUSTOMER SERVICE & SUPPORT https://support.fortinet.com

FORTINET TRAINING & CERTIFICATION PROGRAM

https://www.fortinet.com/training-certification

NSE INSTITUTE https://training.fortinet.com

FORTIGUARD CENTER https://www.fortiguard.com

END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT https://www.fortinet.com/doc/legal/EULA.pdf

FEEDBACK Email: techdoc@fortinet.com



April 08, 2022 FortiOS 6.4 AWS Administration Guide 01-640-619425-20220408

TABLE OF CONTENTS

| About FortiGate-VM for AWS | 6 |
|--|------|
| Instance type support | 6 |
| Region support | 8 |
| Models | 9 |
| Licensing | 11 |
| Order types | |
| Creating a support account | 12 |
| FortiCare-generated license adoption for AWS on-demand variant | |
| Migrating a FortiGate-VM instance between license types | 14 |
| Deploying FortiGate-VM on AWS | . 16 |
| Launching FortiGate-VM on AWS | . 16 |
| Security best practices | 16 |
| Opening ports in the security group | 17 |
| Administrative access | |
| IAM roles | |
| Login credentials | |
| AWS services and components | |
| Ordinary FortiGate-VM single instance deployment or FortiGate-native active-passive | |
| high availability | |
| Additional or alternative HA using AWS mechanisms | |
| Monitoring Related AWS services used as prerequisites for additional HA or extra features | |
| Bootstrapping the FortiGate-VM at initial bootup using user data | |
| Setting up IAM roles | |
| Creating S3 buckets with license and firewall configurations | |
| Launching the instance using roles and user data | |
| Deploying from BYOL AMI | |
| Deploying on AWS China | |
| Creating a VPC and subnets | |
| Attaching the new VPC Internet gateway | |
| Launching the instance with shared FortiGate-VM AMI | |
| Connecting to the FortiGate-VM | 33 |
| Upgrading the FortiGate-VM | |
| Backing up and restoring configuration | 38 |
| Deploying auto scaling on AWS | 39 |
| Planning | |
| Technical requirements | |
| Requirements when using an existing VPC | . 42 |
| Obtaining the deployment package | |
| BYOL license files | |
| Deploying the CloudFormation templates | |
| Deployment notes | |
| CFT parameters | |
| Optional settings | . 59 |

| Completing the deployment | .60 |
|---|------|
| Locating deployed resources | .63 |
| Verifying the deployment | |
| Connecting to the primary FortiGate-VM | .70 |
| Attaching a VPC to the Transit Gateway | 73 |
| Troubleshooting | |
| CREATE_FAILED error in CloudFormation stack | |
| The election of the primary FortiGate-VM was not successful | |
| How to reset the elected primary-VM FortiGate | |
| Appendix FortiGate Autoscale for AWS features | 81 |
| AWS GovCloud (US) support | |
| How to partially route egress traffic | |
| Deployment templates | |
| Cloud-init | |
| Architectural diagrams | |
| Upgrading the deployment | |
| FortiGate Autoscale for AWS document history | .95 |
| Single FortiGate-VM deployment | 96 |
| Determining your licensing model | . 96 |
| Creating a VPC and subnets | .97 |
| Attaching the new VPC Internet gateway | . 98 |
| Subscribing to the FortiGate | 99 |
| Creating routing tables and associate subnets | 101 |
| Connecting to the FortiGate-VM | 107 |
| Setting up a Windows Server in the protected network | 110 |
| HA for FortiGate-VM on AWS1 | 13 |
| Deploying and configuring FortiGate-VM active-active HA | 113 |
| Deploying and configuring ELB-based HA/load balancing | 113 |
| Creating two subnets on your Amazon VPC | |
| Creating a security group for the FortiGate-VM | |
| Allocating EIPs for the FortiGate-VM and for public access | |
| | 115 |
| Assigning an IP address to the FortiGate-VM Creating a default route | |
| Configuring the FortiGate-VM | |
| Deploying the Windows Server | |
| Creating a second subnet and deploying a second FortiGate-VM | |
| Creating an ELB between the FortiGate-VMs | |
| Results | |
| Deploying FortiGate-VM active-passive HA on AWS within one zone | |
| Deploying FortiGate-VM active-passive HA AWS between multiple zones | 131 |
| Deploying FortiGate-VM active-passive HA AWS between multiple zones manually with | |
| Transit Gateway integration | |
| Creating VPCs and subnets | |
| Creating a Transit Gateway and related resources | 141 |

| Creating an Internet gateway | |
|--|-----|
| Creating VPC route tables | |
| Deploying FortiGate-VM from AWS marketplace Adding network interfaces and elastic IP addresses to the FortiGate-VMs | |
| Configuring the FortiGate-VMs | |
| Updating the route table and adding an IAM policy | |
| Testing FortiGate-VM HA failover | |
| Deploying FortiGate-VM using Terraform | |
| Support | |
| SDN connector integration with AWS | |
| Certificate-based SDN connector integration | |
| Configuring an AWS SDN connector using IAM roles | |
| AWS Kubernetes (EKS) SDN connector | |
| Populating threat feeds with GuardDuty | |
| Security implications | |
| Parameters | |
| Installation | |
| Setting up CloudWatch | |
| Testing the setup | |
| (Optional) Generating sample findings in GuardDuty | |
| Setting up the FortiGate(s) | |
| Cleanup | |
| Pipelined automation using AWS Lambda Creating an automation stitch | |
| Configuring an example automation stitch | |
| Configuring FortiGate-VM load balancer using dynamic address objects | |
| Accessing a cloud server using an SDN connector via VPN | |
| VPN for FortiGate-VM on AWS | |
| Connecting a local FortiGate to an AWS VPC VPN | |
| Connecting a local FortiGate to an AWS FortiGate via site-to-site VPN | |
| SD-WAN cloud on-ramp | |
| • | |
| Security inspection with Gateway Load Balancer integration | |
| North-south security inspection to customer VPC | |
| Creating the GWLB and registering targets Creating the LB endpoint | |
| VPC route tables | |
| Post-deployment configuration | |
| Validating the configuration | |
| East-west security inspection between two customer VPCs | 192 |
| Creating the GWLB and registering targets | |
| Creating the LB endpoint | |
| Creating the transit gateway | |
| Route tables | |
| Post-deployment configuration Validating the configuration | |
| | |
| Change log | |

About FortiGate-VM for AWS

By combining stateful inspection with a comprehensive suite of powerful security features, FortiGate Next Generation Firewall (NGFW) technology delivers complete content and network protection. This solution is available for deployment on AWS.

In addition to advanced features such as an extreme threat database, vulnerability management, and flow-based inspection, features including application control, firewall, antivirus, IPS, web filter, and VPN work in concert to identify and mitigate the latest complex security threats.

The security-hardened FortiOS operating system is purpose-built for inspecting and identifying malware and supports direct Single Root I/O Virtualization (SR-IOV) for higher and more consistent performance.

FortiGate-VM for AWS supports active/passive high availability (HA) configuration with FortiGate-native unicast HA synchronization between the primary and secondary nodes. When the FortiGate-VM detects a failure, the passive firewall instance becomes active and uses AWS API calls to configure its interfaces/ports.

FortiGate-VM also supports active/active HA using elastic load balancing, as well as auto scaling.

Highlights of FortiGate-VM for AWS include the following:

- Delivers complete content and network protection by combining stateful inspection with a comprehensive suite of powerful security features.
- IPS technology protects against current and emerging network-level threats. In addition to signature-based threat
 detection, IPS performs anomaly-based detection, which alerts users to any traffic that matches attack behavior
 profiles.
- New Docker application control signatures protect your container environments from newly emerged security threats. See FortiGate-VM on a Docker environment.

Instance type support

FortiGate-VM supports the following instance types on AWS. Supported instances in the AWS marketplace listing may change without notice and vary between bring your own license (BYOL) and on-demand models. See Order types on page 11. As of May 2018, C3 and M-series instances no longer appear as recommended instances.

When you run FortiGate-native active-passive HA, each FortiGate-VM instance requires four network interfaces (port 1 to port 4). For details, see Deploying FortiGate-VM active-passive HA on AWS within one zone on page 123.

For up-to-date information on each instance type, see the following links:

- Amazon EC2 Instance Types
- Elastic Network Interfaces

| Instance category | Instance type | vCPU | Max NIC (enabled by AWS) | FortiGate minimum order (BYOL) to consume all instance CPU |
|----------------------|---------------|------|--------------------------------|--|
| General purpose | T2.small | 1 | 2 | FG-VM01 or FG-VM01v |

| Instance category | Instance type | vCPU | Max NIC (enabled by AWS) | FortiGate minimum order (BYOL) to consume all instance CPU |
|----------------------|---|------|--------------------------------|--|
| Compute | C4.large | 2 | 3 | FG-VM02 or FG-VM02v |
| optimized | C4.xlarge | 4 | 4 | FG-VM04 or FG-VM04v |
| | C4.2xlarge | 8 | 4 | FG-VM08 or FG-VM08v |
| | C4.4xlarge | 16 | 8 | FG-VM16 or FG-VM16v |
| | C4.8xlarge | 36 | 8 | FG-VMUL or FG-VMULv |
| | C5.large (recommended by default) | 2 | 3 | FG-VM02 or FG-VM02v |
| | C5.xlarge | 4 | 4 | FG-VM04 or FG-VM04v |
| | C5.2xlarge | 8 | 4 | FG-VM08 or FG-VM08v |
| | C5.4xlarge | 16 | 8 | FG-VM16 or FG-VM16v |
| | C5.9xlarge | 36 | 8 | FG-VMUL or FG-VMULv |
| | C5.18xlarge | 72 | 15 | |

You can apply a smaller FortiGate-VM license if you are OK with consuming less CPU than is present on your instance. See Models on page 9.

To change your instance type to the recommended C5 instance type, ensure that ENA is enabled. Otherwise the instance does not boot up properly.

In the following example, after changing the instance type to C5, ENA is not enabled. The example shows changing the ENA support attribute to true:

```
$ aws ec2 describe-instances --instance-ids i-xxxxxx --query "Reservations[].Instances
    [].EnaSupport"
[]
$ aws ec2 modify-instance-attribute --instance-id i-xxxxxx --ena-support
$ aws ec2 describe-instances --instance-ids i-xxxxxx --query "Reservations[].Instances
    [].EnaSupport"
[
true
]
```

The instance can now boot up as a C5 instance type.

FortiOS 6.4.3 and later versions support hot-adding vCPU and RAM. However, AWS may not support this. See Requirements for changing the instance type.

Region support

BYOL and on-demand deployments support the following regions. See Order types on page 11.

Instance support may vary depending on the regions.

For details about regions, see Regions and Availability Zones.

| Region name | Region code |
|---------------------------|----------------|
| US East (N. Virginia) | us-east-1 |
| US East (Ohio) | us-east-2 |
| US West (N. California) | us-west-1 |
| US West (Oregon) | us-west-2 |
| Asia Pacific (Hong Kong) | ap-east-1 |
| Asia Pacific (Mumbai) | ap-south-1 |
| Asia Pacific (Seoul) | ap-northeast-2 |
| Asia Pacific (Singapore) | ap-southeast-1 |
| Asia Pacific (Sydney) | ap-southeast-2 |
| Asia Pacific (Tokyo) | ap-northeast-1 |
| Canada (Central) | ca-central-1 |
| EU (Frankfurt) | eu-central-1 |
| EU (Ireland) | eu-west-1 |
| EU (London) | eu-west-2 |
| EU (Paris) | eu-west-3 |
| EU (Stockholm) | eu-north-1 |
| Middle East (Bahrain) | me-south-1 |
| South America (São Paulo) | sa-east-1 |
| AWS GovCloud (US-East) | us-gov-east-1 |
| AWS GovCloud (US-West) | us-gov-west-1 |

AWS China is supported but does not appear with these regions when you log into the AWS portal. To use AWS resources on AWS China, you must have an AWS China account separate from your global AWS account.

FortiGate-VM for AWS China only supports the BYOL licensing model. To activate it, you must obtain a license. See Deploying on AWS China on page 30.

Models

FortiGate-VM is available with different CPU and RAM sizes. You can deploy FortiGate-VM on various private and public cloud platforms. The following table shows the models conventionally available to order, also known as BYOL models. See Order types on page 11.

| Model name | vCPU | |
|-----------------|---------|-----------|
| | Minimum | Maximum |
| FG-VM01/01v/01s | 1 | 1 |
| FG-VM02/02v/02s | 1 | 2 |
| FG-VM04/04v/04s | 1 | 4 |
| FG-VM08/08v/08s | 1 | 8 |
| FG-VM16/16v/16s | 1 | 16 |
| FG-VM32/32v/32s | 1 | 32 |
| FG-VMUL/ULv/ULs | 1 | Unlimited |



The v-series and s-series do not support virtual domains (VDOMs) by default. To add VDOMs, you must separately purchase perpetual VDOM addition licenses. You can add and stack VDOMs up to the maximum supported number after initial deployment.

Generally there are RAM size restrictions to FortiGate-VM BYOL licenses. However, these restrictions are not applicable to AWS deployments. Any RAM size with certain CPU models are allowed. Licenses are based on the number of CPUs only.

Previously, platform-specific models such as FortiGate-VM for AWS with an AWS-specific orderable menu existed. However, the common model is now applicable to all supported platforms.

For information about each model's order information, capacity limits, and adding VDOMs, see the FortiGate-VM datasheet.

The primary requirement for the provisioning of a FortiGate-VM may be the number of interfaces it can accommodate rather than its processing capabilities. In some cloud environments, the options with a high number of interfaces tend to have high numbers of vCPUs.

The licensing for FortiGate-VM does not restrict whether the FortiGate can work on a VM instance in a public cloud that uses more vCPUs than the license allows. The number of vCPUs indicated by the license does not restrict the FortiGate-VM from working, regardless of how many vCPUs are included in the virtual instance. However, only the licensed number of vCPUs process traffic and management. The rest of the vCPUs are unused.

The following shows an example for a FGT-VM08 license:

| License | 1 vCPU | 2 vCPU | 4 vCPU | 8 vCPU | 16 vCPU | 32 vCPU |
|----------|--------|--------|--------|--------|---|---|
| FGT-VM08 | ОК | ОК | ОК | ОК | FortiOS uses eight vCPUs for traffic and management. It does not use the rest. | FortiOS uses eight vCPUs for traffic and management. It does not use the rest. |

You can provision a VM instance based on the number of interfaces you need and license the FortiGate-VM for only the processors you need.

Licensing

You must have a license to deploy FortiGate-VM for AWS.

Order types

On AWS, there are usually two order types: BYOL and on-demand.

BYOL offers perpetual (normal series and v-series) and annual subscription (s-series) licensing as opposed to ondemand, which is an hourly subscription available with marketplace-listed products. BYOL licenses are available for purchase from resellers or your distributors, and the publicly available price list, which is updated quarterly, lists prices. BYOL licensing provides the same ordering practice across all private and public clouds, no matter what the platform is. You must activate a license for the first time you access the instance from the GUI or CLI before you can start using various features.

With an on-demand subscription, the FortiGate-VM becomes available for use immediately after you create the instance. The marketplace product page mentions term-based prices (hourly or annual).

For BYOL and on-demand deployments, cloud vendors charge separately for resource consumption on computing instances, storage, and so on, without use of software running on top of it (in this case the FortiGate-VM).

For BYOL, you typically order a combination of products and services including support entitlement. New s-series SKUs contain the VM base and service bundle entitlements for easier ordering. On-demand includes support, for which you must contact Fortinet Support with your customer information. See *Support Information* on the marketplace product page.

To purchase on-demand, all you need to do is subscribe to the product on the marketplace. However, you must contact Fortinet Support with your customer information to obtain support entitlement. See Creating a support account on page 12. For the latest on-demand pricing and support details, see the FortiGate-VM on-demand marketplace product page.



On-demand FortiGate-VM instances do not support the use of virtual domains (VDOMs). If you plan to use VDOMs, deploy BYOL instances instead.



On-demand and BYOL licensing and payment models are not interchangeable. For example, once you spin up a FortiGate-VM on-demand instance, you cannot inject a BYOL license on the same VM. Likewise, you cannot convert a FortiGate-VM BYOL instance to on-demand.

When using a FortiGate-VM on-demand instance prior to version 6.4.2, the FortiOS GUI may display expiry dates for FortiGuard services. However, these expiries are automatically extended for as long as the on-demand instance's lifespan. You do not need to be concerned about the expiry of FortiGuard services. For example, the following screenshot shows 2038/01/02.

| 🍄 Dashboard | > ^ | FortiGuard Distribution Network | | |
|----------------------------|-----|---------------------------------------|--|-----|
| 🔆 Security Fabric | > | | | |
| 🛋 FortiView | > | License Information | | |
| + Network | > | Entitlement | Status | |
| System | ~ | FortiCare Support | Not Supported | |
| Administrators | - 1 | Firmware & General Updates | Licensed - expires on 2038/01/02 | |
| Admin Profiles Firmware | | Application Control Signatures | • Version 16.00975 | O U |
| Settings | - 1 | Device & OS Identification | • Version 1.00110 | |
| HA | | Internet Service Database Definitions | • Version 7.01212 | |
| SNMP | - 1 | Intrusion Prevention | Licensed - expires on 2038/01/02 | |
| Replacement Messages | | IPS Definitions | • Version 16.00975 | 0 U |
| FortiGuard | ☆ | IPS Engine | • Version 5.00021 | |
| Advanced | | | | |

FortiOS 6.4.2 and later versions do not display dates.



Creating a support account

FortiGate-VM for AWS supports on-demand and BYOL licensing models. See Order types on page 11.

To make use of Fortinet technical support and ensure products function properly, you must complete certain steps to activate your entitlement. The Fortinet support team can identify your registration in the system thereafter.

First, if you do not have a Fortinet account, create one at Customer Service & Support.

BYOL

You must obtain a license to activate the FortiGate-VM. If you have not activated the license, you will see the license upload screen when you log in to the FortiGate-VM and cannot proceed to configure the FortiGate-VM.

You can obtain licenses for the BYOL licensing model through any Fortinet partner. If you do not have a partner, contact awssales@fortinet.com for assistance in purchasing a license.

After you purchase a license or obtain an evaluation license (60-day term), you receive a PDF with an activation code.

To register a BYOL license:

- 1. Go to Customer Service & Support and create a new account or log in with an existing account.
- 2. Go to Asset > Register/Activate to start the registration process.

- 3. In the *Registration* page, enter the registration code that was emailed to you, and select *Next* to access the registration form.
- 4. If you register the S-series subscription model, the site prompts you to select one of the following:
 - a. Click Register to newly register the code to acquire a new serial number with a new license file.
 - **b.** Click *Renew* to renew and extend the licensed period on top of the existing serial number, so that all features on the VM node continue working uninterrupted upon license renewal.
- 5. At the end of the registration process, download the license (.lic) file to your computer. You will upload this license later to activate the FortiGate-VM.

After registering a license, Fortinet servers may take up to 30 minutes to fully recognize the new license. When you upload the license (.lic) file to activate the FortiGate-VM, if you get an error that the license is invalid, wait 30 minutes and try again.

On-demand

To create a support account for on-demand deployments:

- 1. Deploy and boot the FortiGate-VM on-demand Elastic Compute Cloud (EC2) instance and log into the FortiGate-VM GUI management console.
- 2. From the Dashboard, copy the FortiGate-VM serial number.
- 3. Go to Customer Service & Support and create a new account or log in with an existing account.
- 4. Go to Asset > Register/Activate to start the registration process.
- 5. In the *Registration* page, enter the serial number, and select *Next* to continue registering the product. Enter your details in the other fields.
- 6. After completing registration, contact Fortinet Customer Support and provide your FortiGate instance's serial number and the email address associated with your Fortinet account.

FortiCare-generated license adoption for AWS on-demand variant

FortiGate-VM AWS on-demand instances can obtain FortiCare-generated licenses and register to FortiCare.

The valid license allows you to register to FortiCare to use features including FortiToken with the FortiGate-VM instance.

The FortiGate-VM must be able to reach FortiCare to receive a valid on-demand license. Ensure connectivity to FortiCare (https://directregistration.fortinet.com/) by checking all related setup on security groups, access control lists, Internet gateways, route tables, public IP addresses, and so on.

If you created the FortiGate-VM in a closed environment or it cannot reach FortiCare, the FortiGate-VM self-generates a local license as in previous versions of FortiOS. You can obtain a FortiCare license, ensure that the FortiGate-VM can connect to FortiCare, then run the execute vm-license command to obtain the license from FortiCare.

To deploy a FortiGate-VM 6.2.2 AWS on-demand instance:

When deploying a FortiGate-VM on-demand instance for AWS, you will use the FGT_VM64_AWS-v6-buildXXXX-FORTINET.out image. After deployment with this image, running get system status results in output that includes the following lines:

Version: FortiGate-VM64-AWS v6.2.2, buildXXXX,XXXXXX (GA)

```
Virus-DB: 71.00242(2019-08-30 08:19)
Extended DB: 1.00000(2018-04-09 18:07)
Extreme DB: 1.00000(2018-04-09 18:07)
IPS-DB: 6.00741(2015-12-01 02:30)
```

IPS-ETDB: 0.00000(2001-01-01 00:00) APP-DB: 6.00741(2015-12-01 02:30) INDUSTRIAL-DB: 6.00741(2015-12-01 02:30)

| Serial-Number: FGTAWS12345678 | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|-----|---------------------------|---------------------|---|------|------------------------------------|----------|--|----|------------------------------------|
| FortiGate VM64-AWS | FGT | AWS | | | | | | lener de la companya | | Q 🔹 🛌 🚺 🞯 🗛 🌏 admi |
| 🙆 Dashboard | ~ | System Infor | mation I- | Licenses (5 96.45.33.86) | 0 1- | Virtual Machine | 1- | FortiGate Cloud | 1- | Security Fabric |
| Status Top Usage LAN/DMZ Security | \$ | Hostname Serial Number | FGTAWS | FortiCare Support Firmware & General Updates | | FGVMPG License Allocated vCPUs | 1 | Status 🔥 Not Activated | | |
| Security Fabric | > | Firmware | v6.2.2 builds | O IPS | | Allocated RAM | 1001 MIB | | | ronwys and rabic root |
| FortiView | > | Mode | NAT | AntiVirus | | Auto Scaling O Disabled | | | | |
| + Network | > | System Time | 2019/08/30 14:47:09 | Web Filtering | | Auto Scaling 😺 Disabled | | | | |
| System | > | Uptime | 00:00:01:35 | | | | | | | |
| Policy & Objects | > | WAN IP | 3.89.89.65 | FortiToken | 0/2 | | | | | |
| Security Profiles | > | | | | | | | | | ▲ FortiGate Telemetry is disabled. |

To upgrade a FortiGate-VM AWS on-demand instance from FortiOS 6.2.1 and earlier to 6.2.2:

Earlier versions used the FGT_VM64_AWSONDEMAND-v6-buildXXXX-FORTINET.out image to deploy a FortiGate-VM AWS on-demand instance. In 6.2.2, the FGT_VM64_AWS-v6-buildXXXX-FORTINET.out image is used to deploy a FortiGate-VM AWS on-demand instance.

When upgrading from an earlier FortiOS version, you must first upgrade using the FGT_VM64_AWSONDEMAND image, then use the FGT_VM64_AWS image.

- 1. In FortiOS, perform an upgrade using the FGT_VM64_AWSONDEMAND-v6-buildXXXX-FORTINET.out image.
- 2. Perform another upgrade, this time using the FGT_VM64_AWS-v6-buildXXXX-FORTINET.out image. This process is irreversible.

| FortiGate VM64-AWS | | AWS LE | h. | | | | | - Alexandre - A | | Q 🔹 >_ 🚦 🕐 🛛 🖓 adm |
|---|---|---------------------------|---------------------|---|------|---|----------|---|----|------------------------------------|
| 2 Dashboard | × | System Inform | nation I• | Licenses (1 96.45.33.86) | 0 1- | Virtual Machine | 1- | FortiGate Cloud | 1+ | Security Fabric |
| Status Top Usage LAN/DMZ Security | ☆ | Hostname Serial Number | FGTAWS | FortiCare Support Firmware & General Updates | | FGVMPG License Allocated vCPUs | 1 | Status 🔺 Not Activated | | |
| Security Fabric | > | Firmware | v6.2.2 build | O IPS | | Allocated RAM | 1001 MIB | | | |
| FortiView Network | > | System Time | 2019/08/30 14:47:09 | AntiVirus | | Auto Scaling Oisabled | | | | |
| System | > | Uptime | 00:00:01:35 | Web Filtering FortiToken | 0/2 | | | | | |
| Policy & Objects Security Profiles | > | WAN IP | 3.89.89.65 | 0% | 072 | | | | | ▲ FortiGate Telemetry is disabled. |

3. Run get system status results in output that includes the following lines: Version: FortiGate-VM64-AWS v6.2.2, buildXXXX,XXXXXX (GA) Virus-DB: 71.00246(2019-08-30 12:19)

```
Extended DB: 1.00000(2018-04-09 18:07)
Extreme DB: 1.00000(2018-04-09 18:07)
IPS-DB: 14.00680(2019-08-30 02:29)
IPS-ETDB: 0.00000(2001-01-01 00:00)
APP-DB: 14.00680(2019-08-30 02:29)
INDUSTRIAL-DB: 14.00680(2019-08-30 02:29)
Serial-Number: FGTAWS1234567890
```

4. For future upgrades, use the FGT_VM64_AWS-v6-buildXXXX-FORTINET.out image to retain on-demand status. You cannot directly upgrade a FortiGate-VM AWS on-demand instance from 6.2.1 or earlier to 6.2.3 and later versions. You must first follow the procedure detailed above.

Migrating a FortiGate-VM instance between license types

When deploying a FortiGate-VM on public cloud, you determine the license type (on-demand or BYOL) during deployment. The license type is fixed for the VM's lifetime. The image that you use to deploy the FortiGate-VM on the public cloud marketplace predetermines the license type.

Migrating a FortiGate-VM instance from one license type to another requires a new deployment. You cannot simply switch license types on the same VM instance. However, you can migrate the configuration between two VMs running as

different license types. There are also FortiOS feature differences between on-demand and BYOL license types. For example, a FortiGate-VM on-demand instance is packaged with Unified Threat Management protection and does not support VDOMs, whereas a FortiGate-VM BYOL instance supports greater protection levels and features depending on its contract.

To migrate FortiOS configuration to a FortiGate-VM of another license type:

- 1. Connect to the FortiOS GUI or CLI and back up the configuration. See Configuration backups.
- 2. Deploy a new FortiGate-VM instance with the desired license type. If deploying a BYOL instance, you must purchase a new license from a Fortinet reseller. You can apply the license after deployment via the FortiOS GUI or bootstrap the license and configuration during initial bootup using custom data as described in Bootstrapping the FortiGate-VM at initial bootup using user data on page 21.
- 3. Restore the configuration on the FortiGate-VM instance that you deployed in step 2. As with the license, you can inject the configuration during initial bootup. Alternatively, you can restore the configuration in the FortiOS GUI as described in Configuration backups.
- 4. If you deployed an on-demand instance in step 2, register the license. To receive support for an on-demand license, you must register the license as described in Creating a support account on page 12.

Deploying FortiGate-VM on AWS

Launching FortiGate-VM on AWS

See Single FortiGate-VM deployment on page 96.



The most basic deployment consists of one FortiGate-VM with two elastic network interfaces (ENIs) facing a public subnet and private subnet, with the FortiGate-VM deployed inline between the two subnets. A single FortiGate-VM protects a single virtual private cloud (VPC) with a single availability zone (AZ). The public subnet's default gateway is an AWS Internet gateway, and the FortiGate-VM's private subnet-facing ENI is the private subnet's default gateway. Protected EC2 instances such as web servers, database servers, or other endpoints are assumed to exist in the private subnet. One elastic/public IP address or IPv4 DNS name must be allocated to the FortiGate-VM in the public subnet for you to access the FortiGate-VM remotely via HTTPS or SSH over the Internet for initial configuration.

Security best practices

General AWS security best practices can be found at AWS Security Best Practices.

In addition to following the general AWS guidelines, there are best practices to follow when deploying FortiGate-VM for AWS.

Opening ports in the security group

By default, when you deploy FortiGate-VM, there is a predefined security group that you can select based on Fortinet's recommendation. The following ports are allowed in the predefined security group assuming immediate and near-future needs.

| | Protocol/ports | Purpose |
|----------|----------------|---|
| Incoming | TCP 22 | SSH |
| | TCP 80 | НТТР |
| | TCP 443 | HTTPS, management GUI access to the FortiGate-VM |
| | TCP 541 | Management by FortiManager located outside AWS |
| | TCP 3000 | Not immediately required, but typically used for incoming |
| | TCP 8080 | access to web servers, and so on |
| Outgoing | Any | |

FortiGate-specific open ports are explained in Fortinet Communication Ports and Protocols.

To configure bare-minimum access that gives the most strict incoming access, allow only TCP 443 to access the FortiGate-VM GUI console as mentioned in Connecting to the FortiGate-VM on page 107 and close all other ports. You may want to allow ICMP for pinging, and so on, as needed.

Administrative access

This is rather an ordinary consideration than AWS-specific to secure the FortiGate-VM and protect it by configuring allowed and restricted protocols and ports in corporate security scenes.

One example is to configure the local admin access to one of the FortiGate-VM's local network interfaces. Log into the GUI, go to *Network > Interfaces*, then chose the desired port to configure under *Administrative Access*.

| Dashboard | Edit Interface | | | | | | |
|------------------------------|--|--------------------------------------|--|--|--|--|--|
| ⅔ Security Fabric > | Interface Name port1 (0:0D:3A:91:BF | | | | | | |
| 🖿 FortiView > | Alias | :FE) | | | | | |
| + Network 🗸 | Link Status Up 😡 | | | | | | |
| Interfaces 🗘 | Type Physical Interface | | | | | | |
| DNS | Type Thysica meriace | | | | | | |
| Packet Capture | Tags | | | | | | |
| SD-WAN | Role 1 Undefined | • | | | | | |
| Performance SLA | Add Tag Categor | y | | | | | |
| SD-WAN Rules | | | | | | | |
| Static Routes | Address | | | | | | |
| Policy Routes | Addressing mode | Manual DHCP Dedicated to FortiSwitch | | | | | |
| RIP | Status | Connected | | | | | |
| OSPF | Obtained IP/Netmask | 10.66.0.4 255.255.255.0 Renew | | | | | |
| BGP | Expiry Date | 01/19/2038 03:14:07 | | | | | |
| Multicast | Acquired DNS | 168.63.129.16 | | | | | |
| System > | Default Gateway | 10.66.0.1 | | | | | |
| ▲ Policy & Objects > | Retrieve default gateway from server C | | | | | | |
| ▲ Security Profiles > | Distance | 5 | | | | | |
| □ VPN > | Override internal DNS | | | | | | |
| Loser & Device > | Administrative Access | | | | | | |
| ♥ WiFi & Switch Controller > | IPv4 | PING FMG-Access | | | | | |
| Log & Report > | CAPWAP SSH | SNMP FTM | | | | | |
| C Monitor > | RADIUS Accounting | FortiTelemetry | | | | | |
| Q | | OK Cancel | | | | | |

To configure general firewall policies to protect VMs in the networks, refer to Setting up a Windows Server in the protected network on page 110 or the FortiOS documentation for details.

IAM roles

To deploy FortiGate-VM on the marketplace, you must log into the AWS portal as an AWS user. Your organization's administrator may have granted permissions via certain IAM roles. AWS security best practices explain when and in what use cases you need IAM roles. How you manage IAM users and roles is up to your organization.

When deploying FortiGate-VM on marketplace web or EC2 console, your AWS account must have appropriate permissions, including being able to subscribe to AWS resources through the marketplace, access EC2 resources, browse AWS resource groups, and so on.

Login credentials

By default, you can log into the FortiGate-VM through HTTPS or SSH using the username "admin" and the FortiGate-VM's instance ID as the initial password. SSH also requires your AWS key.

The instance ID is relatively secure as it is visible only within the AWS portal or by running the AWS CLI. However, it may be viewable to those who have access to AWS resources but should not have access to the FortiGate-VM within the same organization. It is strongly recommended to change the initial password the first time you log in or activate the license. You can also create other administrative users using more complex character strings than "admin" in a manner difficult to guess, or add two-factor authentication or other methods to secure login.

AWS services and components

FortiGate-VM for AWS is an Elastic Compute Cloud (EC2) instance with an Elastic Block Store (EBS) volume attached. The following lists AWS services and components that you must understand when deploying FortiGate-VM for different purposes:

Ordinary FortiGate-VM single instance deployment or FortiGate-native activepassive high availability

| Service/component | Description |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| Virtual private cloud (VPC) | This is where the FortiGate-VM and protected VMs are situated and users control the network. The public-facing interface is routed to the Internet gateway, which is created within the VPC. |
| EC2 | FortiGate-VM for AWS is an EC2 VM instance. Every instance has a unique instance ID. |
| Subnets, route tables | You must appropriately configure FortiGate-VM with subnets and route tables to handle traffic. |
| Internet gateways | The AWS gateway as a VPC component that allows communication between instances in your VPC and the Internet. |
| Elastic IP address (EIP) | At least one public IP address must be allocated to the FortiGate-VM to access and manage it over the Internet. |
| Security groups | AWS public-facing protection. Allow only necessary ports and protocols. |
| AMI | A special type of deployable image used on AWS. You can launch FortiGate-VM (BYOL) directly from the publicly available FortiGate AMI instead of using the marketplace. See Deploying from BYOL AMI on page 26. The on-demand AMI is launchable but does not allow you to properly boot up as it is not intended to be deployed from AMI. |
| CloudFormation Templates (CFT) | FortiGate instances can be deployed using CFTs where tailor-made resource instantiation is defined. Fortinet provides CFTs for the following use cases: Deploying FortiGate-native A-P HA Customer-required scenarios with particular topologies CFTs are available on GitHub. Fortinet-provided CFTs are not supported within the regular Fortinet technical support scope. Contact awssales@fortinet.com with questions. |

Additional or alternative HA using AWS mechanisms

| Service/component | Description |
|-------------------|---|
| Auto Scaling | Auto scaling can automatically scale out by instantiating additional FortiGate-VM instances at times of high workloads. See Deploying auto scaling on AWS on page 39. |
| | To run auto scaling, you must enable/subscribe to coexisting AWS services: Route 53 API gateway Load Balancer CloudWatch Lambda SNS DynamoDB Simple Storage Services (S3) (BYOL only) These services are not always required for AWS auto scaling in general, but are predefined in Fortinet-provided Lambda scripts. |
| Load Balancer | Also called Elastic Load Balancer (ELB). A network load balancer automatically distributes traffic across multiple FortiGate-VM instances when configured properly. Topologies will be different depending on how you distribute incoming and outgoing traffic and cover AZs. There are two use cases to use LB with FortiGate-VM: Deploying and configuring ELB-based HA/load balancing on page 113 Used in conjunction with auto scaling. See Deploying auto scaling on AWS on page 39. |

Monitoring

| Service/component | Description |
|-------------------|--|
| CloudWatch | Monitoring service for various AWS resources. You can use CloudWatch in three scenarios with FortiGate-VM: Monitor FortiGate-VM instance health and alert when needed. Define auto scaling scale-out triggers to fire alarms Monitor GuardDuty events |
| | You must subscribe to CloudWatch to use corresponding features. |

Related AWS services used as prerequisites for additional HA or extra features

| Service/component | Description |
|-------------------|--|
| Lambda | AWS Lambda lets you run certain scripts and codes without provisioning servers.Fortinet provides Lambda scripts for:Running auto scaling |

| Service/component | Description |
|-------------------|---|
| | GuardDuty integration To use the scripts, you must subscribe to Lambda. Fortinet-provided Lambda scripts are not supported within the regular Fortinet technical support scope. Contact awssales@fortinet.com with questions. |
| API Gateway | It acts as a front door by providing a callback URL for the FortiGate-VM to send its API calls and process FortiGate-VM config-sync tasks to synchronize OS configuration across multiple FortiGate-VM instances at the time of auto scaling scale-out. It is required if the config-sync feature needs to be incorporated into auto scaling. |
| DynamoDB | A handy flexible database. Fortinet-provided scripts use DynamoDB to store information about varying states of auto scaling conditions. |
| SNS | Managed message service used to communicate between AWS components. Fortinet-provided scripts use SNS to deliver subscription notifications from CFTs to Lambda for auto scaling. |
| GuardDuty | Managed threat detection service that monitors unwanted behaviors/activities related to AWS resources. Fortinet can leverage externally available lists of malicious IP addresses stored at certain locations. GuardDuty can be used to populate such a list. See Populating threat feeds with GuardDuty on page 161. To use this feature, you must subscribe to GuardDuty. |
| S3 | AWS storage. You can use S3 in four scenarios with FortiGate-VM: As the location where the list of blocklisted IP addresses is stored which is pointed by the FortiGate-VM in integrating with GuardDuty. See Populating threat feeds with GuardDuty on page 161. You must allow the FortiGate-VM access to the S3 bucket/directory on S3 configuration. To store license keys which are parsed when provisioning additional FortiGate-VM instances in the event of auto scaling scale-out. To store a license key and the FortiGate-VM config file to bootstrap the FortiGate-VM at initial boot-up. See Bootstrapping the FortiGate-VM at initial bootup using user data on page 21. To store license keys which are parsed when provisioning A-P HA. |

Bootstrapping the FortiGate-VM at initial bootup using user data

If you are installing and configuring your applications on Amazon EC2 dynamically at instance launch time, you will typically need to pull and install packages, deploy files, and ensure services are started. The following bootstrapping instructions help simplify, automate, and centralize FortiGate-VM NGFW deployment directly from the configuration scripts stored in AWS S3. This is also called "cloud-init".

Setting up IAM roles

IAM roles need S3 bucket read access. This example applies the existing AmazonS3ReadOnlyAccess policy to the role by adding the following code or selecting S3ReadOnlyAccess from the policy list in adding to the role:

```
{
   "Version": "2012-10-17",
   "Statement": [
       {
           "Effect": "Allow",
           "Action": [
              "s3:Get*",
               "s3:List*"
           ],
           "Resource": "*"
       }
   1
}
     aws
                Services ~
                             Resource Groups 🗸
                                                  *
  Search IAM
                              Policy name -
  Dashboard
                             AmazonS3ReadOnlyAccess
  Groups
                             Policy summary
                                            {} JSON
  Users
 Roles
  Policies
                                     "Version": "2012-10-17",
                                     "Statement": [
  Identity providers
                                          {
                                             "Effect": "Allow",
  Account settings
                                              "Action": [
                                                  "s3:Get*"
  Credential report
                                                  "s3:List*"
                                              'Resource": "*"
  Encryption keys
                                         }
                                     ]
                                 }
```

If you need further instructions, please refer to the AWS documentation on IAM Roles for Amazon EC2.

Creating S3 buckets with license and firewall configurations

- 1. On the AWS console, create an Amazon S3 bucket at the root level for the bootstrap files.
- Upload the license file and configuration file(s) to the S3 bucket. In this example, one license file and two
 configuration files are uploaded. For example, let's have the following FortiOS CLI command statement in the config
 file:

```
config sys global
   set hostname jkatocloudinit
end
```

This is to set a hostname as part of initial configuration at first-time launch.

3. Amazon S3 creates the bucket in a region you specify. You can choose any AWS region that is geographically close to you to optimize latency, minimize costs, or address regulatory requirements. To choose a region, use the following code:

```
{
```

}

```
"bucket" : "jkatoconf",
"region" : "us-east-2",
"license" : "/FGVM020000130370.lic",
"config" : "/fgtconfig-init.txt"
```

Although the S3 bucket and the firewall can be in different regions, it is highly recommended that they are in the same region in order to speed up the bootstrapping process.

| Services - Re | source Groups 🗸 🔹 🛠 | ¢ | | 🐨 🕶 Global 🕶 | Support 🔻 |
|--|-----------------------------------|--------------------------------------|---------|----------------|--------------|
| Amazon S3 → jkatoconf | | | | | |
| Overview | Properties | Permissions | | | |
| Management | | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| Q Type a prefix and press Enter | er to search. Press ESC to clear. | | | | |
| ▲ Upload + Create folder | Actions ~ | | | US East (Ohio) | C |
| | | | | Viewing 1 to 2 | |
| Name ↑ <u>=</u> | | Last modified 1= | Size 1= | Storage class | ↑ <u>=</u> _ |
| FGVM020000130370. | lic | Oct 22, 2018 12:58:51 PM GMT-0700 | 294.0 B | Standard | |
| fgtconfig-init.txt | | Oct 22, 2018 12:59:41 PM GMT-0700 | 55.0 B | Standard | |
| | | | | Viewing 1 to 2 | |

Launching the instance using roles and user data

Follow the normal procedure to launch the instance from the AWS marketplace.

When selecting the VPC subnet, the instance must with the role that was created and specify the information about the license file and configuration file from the AWS S3 bucket previously configured under *Advanced Settings*. In this example, the role name is jkato-ec2-s3.

| aws Services v | Resource | Groups 🗸 | * | | | ¢ | - 100000 | Ohio 🗸 | Support 👻 | |
|--------------------------------------|-------------|---|--|-------------|----------|---------------------|----------------|---------|----------------|----|
| 1. Choose AMI 2. Choose Instance | Type 3. Cor | nfigure Instance | 4. Add Storage | 5. Add Tags | 6. Conf | igure Security Grou | p 7. Review | | | |
| Step 3: Configure Ins | ance De | etails | | , , | | | | | | |
| Auto-assign Publi | IP (j) | Use subnet se | etting (Enable) | | Ŧ | | | | | • |
| Placement gr | oup (j) | Add instand | e to placement gro | oup. | | | | | | |
| IAM | ole (j) | jkato-ec2-s3 | | | • (| Create new | IAM role | | | |
| Shutdown beha | vior (j) | Stop | | | v | | | | | |
| Enable termination protec | ion (j) | Protect aga | inst accidental terr | mination | | | | | | |
| Monito | ing (j) | Enable Clou Additional cha | udWatch detailed n rges apply. | nonitoring | | | | | | L |
| Tena | ncy (j) | | a shared hardware rges will apply for (| | ▼ Cy. | | | | | L |
| T2/T3 Unlim | ited (j) | Enable Additional cha | rges may apply | | | | | | | l |
| Advanced Details | | | | | | | | | | |
| User | lata (j | { "bucket" : "ikat "region" : "us-e | east-2", 3VM02000013037 | | ncoded | | • | | | - |
| | | | | | Cancel | Previous | Review and Lau | Inch Ne | ext: Add Stora | ge |

After you launch the FortiGate-VM for the first time and log into the management GUI, FortiOS validates the license instead of displaying the license upload prompt.

| | FortiGate VM License |
|-----|---|
| | License is being validated by FortiGuard. |
| | |
| | |
| | |
| | |
| A | VM license has been validated. You need to re-login |
| | VM license has been validated. You need to re-login |
| Use | |
| Use | rname |

After logging in, you can see that the license was activated and that the specified hostname was configured.

| 🚯 Dashboard | ~ | System Inform | nation | : | Licenses (1 209.222.136.7) | a i |
|--------------------------|---|----------------|-----------------------|---|-----------------------------|-----|
| 🖸 Main | ☆ | | and the second second | - | | |
| Security Fabric | > | Hostname | jkatocloudinit | | FortiCare Support | |
| FortiView | > | Serial Number | FGVM020000130370 | | Firmware & General Updates | |
| ₽ Network | > | Firmware | v6.0.3 build0200 (GA) | | ♥ IPS | |
| System | > | Mode | NAT (Flow-based) | | AntiVirus | |
| Policy & Objects | > | System Time | 2018/10/22 13:48:36 | | | |
| Security Profiles | > | Uptime | 00:00:09:58 | | Web Filtering | |
| ⊇ VPN | > | WAN IP | Unknown | | FortiClient 0/10 FortiToken | 0/2 |
| User & Device | > | | | | | |
| WiFi & Switch Controller | > | Virtual Machi | ne | ; | FortiCloud | |
| 山 Log & Report | > | VII CGal Machi | ne | · | | • |
| Monitor | > | S FGVM02 Li | icense | | Status A Not Activated | |

Check the serial number that you have with the license.



You can view the cloud-init log in *Log & Report > System Events*.

| FortiGate VM64-AWS | j ka | toclo | udinit | | | | | ~_ | [] ⑦ | • \$• | 🛛 🕗 adm | hin - |
|--------------------------|-------------|-------|----------|-----------|-------|-------------|---|------------------|---------------|----------|------------|-------|
| 🆚 Dashboard | > | 2 | ; 🕹 | O Add F | ilter | | | | | | - 🔲 Det | tails |
| 🔆 Security Fabric | > | # | Date/1 | Time | Level | User | Message | Log Details | | | | × |
| FortiView | > | 7 | 10 minut | tes ago 🔳 | | ntp_daemon | The IPv4 ntp server, ntp1.fortiguard.com(208.91.112.50), is determined ur | General | | | | |
| + Network | | 8 | 11 minut | tes ago 🔳 | | 着 admin | Administrator admin logged out from https(208.91.114.1) | Date | 2018/10/ | 22 | | |
| | <i>_</i> | 9 | 11 minut | tes ago | | | License status changed to VALID | Time | 13:39:05 | 22 | | |
| System | > | 10 | 11 minut | tes ago 📒 | | | Fortigate update failed for no fds allowed. | | | | | |
| Policy & Objects | > | 11 | 11 minut | tes ago 🔳 | | 着 admin | Administrator admin logged in successfully from https(208.91.114.1) | Log Description | | ting cha | ng changed | |
| Security Profiles | > | 12 | 11 minut | tes ago 🔳 | | 着 admin | Edit system.admin admin | | | | | |
| | | 13 | 11 minut | tes ago 🔳 | | admin 💧 | Configuration is changed in the admin session | Security | | | | |
| I VPN | > | 14 | 11 minut | tes ago 🔳 | | admin | Administrator admin logged out from https(208.91.114.1) | Level | | | | |
| User & Device | > | 15 | 12 minut | tes ago | | admin | Administrator admin logged in successfully from https(208.91.114.1) | Event | | | | |
| WiFi & Switch Controller | > | 16 | 12 minut | tes ago | | antp_daemon | The ntp daemon step adjusted time from Mon Oct 22 13:39:14 2018 to Mc | User Interface | cloudinitd | | | |
| Log & Report | ~ | 17 | 12 minut | tes ago 🔳 | | | Edit system.global | Message | User chang | ed hostn | ame global | |
| | | 18 | 12 minut | tes ago 🔳 | | | User changed hostname global setting to jkatocloudinit from cloudinitd | | setting to jl | atoclou | dinit from | |
| Forward Traffic | | 19 | 12 minut | tes ago 🔳 | | | FortiGuard Message Service controller server is registered | | cloudinitd | | | |
| Local Traffic | | 20 | 12 minut | tes ago 🔳 | | | interface port1 gets a DHCP lease, ip:172.31.36.214, mask:255.255.240.0, | G Other | | | | |
| Sniffer Traffic | | 21 | 12 minut | tes ago 🔳 | | | Disconnected from FortiAnalyzer | Field | | hostr | name | |
| | | 22 | 12 minut | tes ago 🔳 | | | Fortigate started | Old Value | | | 4020000130 | .03 |
| System Events | ☆ | 23 | 13 minut | tes ago 🔳 | | | User rebooted the device from cloudinitd. The reason is 'Rebooting caused | Log event origin | al timestam | p 1540 | 240745 | |
| Router Events | | 24 | 13 minut | tes ago | | | FortiGuard Message Service controller server is not-registered | Log ID | | 3222 | | |
| VPN Events | | | 13 minut | - | | | interface port1 gets a DHCP lease, ip:172.31.36.214, mask:255.255.240.0, | Sub Type | | syste | | |
| | | | 40 | - | | | | New Value | | Jkato | cloudinit | |

Deploying from BYOL AMI

You can deploy FortiGate-VM outside the marketplace launcher if you want to install it manually from the AMI for some reason, such as if your organization does not allow access to the AWS marketplace website. There are AMI images publicly available in various regions for the versions already listed in the marketplace. This deployment works only with AMI for BYOL licensing. Deploying from AMI designed for on-demand is not supported.

If you want to install the latest FortiGate-VM versions immediately after release from Fortinet but you do not see them published in the marketplace or publicly available in the AWS portal, you can always deploy older versions of FortiGate-VM available on the marketplace or the AWS portal as publicly available AMIs, then upgrade using the ".out" upgrade files, which are available at Customer Service & Support.

To deploy from BYOL AMI:

- 1. Select the desired AMI:
 - a. Log into the AWS EC2 console and go to IMAGES > AMIs. Select the appropriate region.



b. Find the desired public AMI from the list of AMI IDs corresponding to your region.

| aws | Services | Resource Gro | ups 🗸 | * | | △ | N. Virginia | ▼ Su | pport 👻 | |
|-------------------------|-----------|----------------------------------|------------|----------------------|-------------------------|----------------------------|---------------|-----------|------------|-----|
| EC2 Dashboard Events | | Launch Actions | * | | _ | | | • | e • | 0 |
| Tags | | Public images 👻 🤇 | AMI ID | : ami-c43364be 💿 | Add filter | | 0 K < | 1 to 1 c | of 1 > 3 | > |
| Reports | | Name | AMI Name | e | | | | AMI ID | | |
| Limits | | | FortiGate- | VM64-AWS build154 | 7 (5 6 3) GA-e5936 | f4a-0d69-479f-919c- | d5e158bd | ami-c433 | 364be | |
| INSTANCES Instances | 11 | | - on outo | | . (0.0.0) 01100000 | | | | | |
| Launch Templates | | | | | | | | | | |
| Spot Requests | | | | | | | | | | |
| Reserved Instance | s | | | | | | | | | |
| Dedicated Hosts | | | | | | | | | | |
| Scheduled Instance | es | | | | | | | | | |
| IMAGES | | < | | | 0.0.0 | | | | | > |
| AMIs | | Image: ami-c43364be | | | | | | | | |
| Bundle Tasks | | Details Tags | | | | | | | | |
| ELASTIC BLOCK STORE | | | AMIID | ami-c43364be | | AMI | | Bate-VM64 | | |
| Volumes | \sim | < | | | | | | | | > |
| 🗨 Feedback 🦉 |) English | (US) | © 2008 | 3 - 2018, Amazon Web | Services, Inc. or its a | ffiliates. All rights rese | rved. Privacy | Policy | Terms of L | Jse |

c. Select the AMI and click Launch.

| 1. 011 | 2. Choose In | stance Type 3. | Configure Instance | 4. Add Stora | ge 5. Add Tags | 6. Configure Sect | urity Group |
|--------|-------------------|----------------|--------------------|--------------|----------------|-------------------|------------------|
| Step | p 2: Choose ar | n Instance | Туре | | | | |
| | General purpose | m4.16xlarge | 64 | 256 | EBS only | Yes | 25 Gigabit |
| | Compute optimized | c5.large | 2 | 4 | EBS only | Yes | Up to 10 Gigabit |
| | Compute optimized | c5.xlarge | 4 | 8 | EBS only | Yes | Up to 10 Gigabit |
| | Compute optimized | c5.2xlarge | 8 | 16 | EBS only | Yes | Up to 10 Gigabit |
| | Compute optimized | c5.4xlarge | 16 | 32 | EBS only | Yes | Up to 10 Gigabit |
| | Compute optimized | c5.9xlarge | 36 | 72 | EBS only | Yes | 10 Gigabit |
| | Compute optimized | c5.18xlarge | 72 | 144 | EBS only | Yes | 25 Gigabit |
| | Compute optimized | c4.large | 2 | 3.75 | EBS only | Yes | Moderate |
| | Compute optimized | c4.xlarge | 4 | 7.5 | EBS only | Yes | High |
| | Compute optimized | c4.2xlarge | 8 | 15 | EBS only | Yes | High |

- 2. Choose a supported instance.

 Feedback

 Feedback

 English (US)

 O 2008 2018, Amazon Web Services, Inc. or its affiliates. All rights reserved.
- 3. Click Next: Configure Instance Details.
- 4. Configure the instance details:
 - a. In the *Network* field, select the VPC that you created.
 - **b.** In the *Subnet* field, select the public subnet.
 - c. In the *Network interfaces* section, you will see the entry for eth0 that was created for the public subnet. Select *Add Device* to add another network interface (in this example, eth1), and select the private subnet. It is recommended that you assign static IP addresses.
 - **d.** When you have two network interfaces, a global IP address is not assigned automatically. You must manually assign a global IP address later. Select *Review and Launch*, then select *Launch*.

| | | 1 |
|--|---|---|
| 1. Choose AMI 2. Choose Instance Type 3 | 3. Configure Instance 4. Add Storage 6. Add Tags 0. Configure Security Oncup 7. Review | |
| | | |
| Step 3: Configure Instance | e Dotalis ent: You can launch multiple instances from the same AMI, request Spot instances to take advantage of the lower pricing, assign an access management role to the instance, and more. | |
| Number of instances () | | |
| Number of instances | j Lauren inte voo scang Goop (j | |
| Purchasing option | D Request Spot Instances | |
| Network (j) | vpc.5d3879091 default v C Create new VPC | |
| Subnet (j) | Isubnet-57ab517d us-east-1c Z38 IP Addresses available Create new subnet | |
| Auto-assign Public IP (i) | i) Use subnet setting (Enable) | |
| IAM role (j) | None C Create new IAM role | |
| Shutdown behavior (i) | i) Stop T | |
| Enable termination protection (j) | 0 Protect against accidental termination | |
| Monitoring (i) | Enable Coud/Watch detailed monitoring Additional charges apply. | |
| Tenancy (j) | Shared - Run a shared hardware instance | |
| T2 Unlimited (j) | 0 Enable Additional charges may apply | |
| Network interfaces (i) | | |
| Device Network Interface Subn | Denet Primary IP Secondary IP addresses IPv6 IPs | |
| eth0 New network interfac v subne | enel-S7abS17 V Auto-assign Add IP | |
| | | |
| Add Device | | |
| Advanced Details | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | Cancel Previous Review and Launch Next: Add Stora |
| Feedback S English (US) | 670 a | 8 - 2018, Amazon Web Services, Inc. or its affiliates, All rights reserved. Privacy Policy Terms of U |

- 5. Click Next: Add Storage.
- 6. In Step 4: Add Storage, you can leave the fields as-is, or change the size of /dev/sdb as desired. The second volume is used for logging.

Privacy Policy Terms of Use

| | . Choose Instan | ce Type 3. Configure | | 4. Add Storage | 5. Add Tags | | figure Security | | |
|---------------------|-------------------------|---|---------------|--------------------|---------------|---|-----------------|--------------------------|-----|
| o your instance, or | e launched wit | h the following storage gs of the root volume. Y about storage option | 'ou can als | o attach additiona | | | | | ies |
| Volume Type (j) | Device (j) | Snapshot () | Size (GiB) | Volume Type | • (1) | | | Throughput (MB/s) (i) | 1 |
| Root | /dev/sda1 | snap- 0a2577b6234d25348 | 2 | General Purpo | ose SSD (GP2) | ۲ | 100 / 3000 | N/A | Ø |
| EBS | <pre>v /dev/sdb v</pre> | Search (case-insensi | t 30 | Magnetic | | ۲ | N/A | N/A | Z |
| Add New Volume | | | | | | | | ut free usage | |

7. Click Next: Add Tags. You can add tags for convenient management.

| <u> </u> | Services - | Resource Groups 🗸 | * | 4 | ≁ N. | Virginia 👻 | Suppo |
|------------------|--|---|---------------------|----------------|-------------------------|-------------|-------|
| 1. Choose AMI | 2. Choose Instance Type | 3. Configure Instance | 4. Add Storage | 5. Add Tags | 6. Configure Security G | òroup | |
| copy of a tag ca | a case-sensitive key-va an be applied to volume | lue pair. For example, yours, instances or both. volumes. Learn more abo | | | | erver. | |
| Key (127 ch | aracters maximum) | Value | (255 characters m | aximum) | Instances | Volumes | |
| Name | | jkato-FGT- | 5.6.3-install-AMI-0 | 04 | | | 8 |
| Add another ta | ag (Up to 50 tags n | naximum) | | | | | |
| | | Cancel | Previous | view and Laund | h Next: Configu | re Security | Group |

8. Click *Next: Configure Security Groups*. Here it is important to allow some incoming ports. Allow TCP port 8443 for management from the GUI. You can also allow TCP port 22 for SSH login. Allow other ports where necessary as noted. The use of ports is explained in the *FortiOS documentation*.

| Incoming TCP ports allowed | Purpose |
|----------------------------|--|
| 22 | SSH |
| 443 | Management using the GUI |
| 541 | Management by FortiManager located outside AWS |
| 8000 | Fortinet Single Sign On |
| 10443 | SSLVPN |

You can change the source address later.

| Step 6: Configure Security Group A security group is a set of firewall rules that control the traffic for your instance. On this page, you can add rules to allow specific traffic to reach your instance. For example, if you want to set up a web server and allow intermet traffic to reach your instance, add rules that allow unrestricted access to the HTTP and HTTPS ports. You can create a new security group or select from an existing one below. Learn more about Amazon EC2 security groups. Assign a security group: Create a new security group Select an existing security group Select an existing security group Security group name: [aunch-wizard-5 Description: [aunch-wizard-5 created 2018-04-11115:41:40.046-07:00] Type I Protocol I Port Range I Source I SSH • TCP 22 Custom • 0.00.0/0, ::/0 GUI access Add Rule Maring Rules with source of 0.0.0.0/0 allow all IP addresses to access your instance. We recommend setting security group rules to allow access from known IP addresses | Ú | | | Add Storage 5. Add | ags 6, Configure Security G | Q [●] ✓ Ohio | ▼ Support ▼ |
|--|--|---|--|--|--------------------------------|---|----------------|
| Select an existing security group Security group name: aunch-wizard-5 Description: aunch-wizard-5 created 2018-04-11T15:41:40.046-07:00 Type () Protocol () Port Range () Source () SSH • TCP 22 Custom • 0.0.0.0/0 HTTPS • TCP 443 Custom • 0.0.0.0/0, ::/0 GUI access Image: Custom • 0.0.0.0/0, ::/0 Add Rule Warning Rules with source of 0.0.0.0/0 allow all IP addresses to access your instance. We recommend setting security group rules to allow access from known IP addresses | Step 6: Config A security group is a se want to set up a web se group or select from an | gure Security G et of firewall rules that con erver and allow Internet tra- existing one below. Lean | roup rol the traffic for you iffic to reach your ins more about Amazo | ur instance. On this page stance, add rules that all on EC2 security groups. | you can add rules to allow spe | cific traffic to reach your instance. F | |
| Description: Jaunch-wizard-5 created 2018-04-11T15:41:40.046-07:00 Type () Protocol () Port Range () Source () Description () SSH TCP 22 Custom • () 0.00.0/0 SSH S HTTPS TCP 443 Custom • () 0.00.0/0, ::/0 GUI access S Add Rule Varning Rules with source of 0.0.0.00 allow all IP addresses to access your instance. We recommend setting security group rules to allow access from known IP addresses Variance | | | | , , , | | | |
| Type () Protocol () Port Range () Source () Description () SSH • TCP 22 Custom • 0.0.0.0/0 SSH S HTTPS • TCP 443 Custom • 0.0.0.0/0, ::/0 GUI access S Add Rule Supervised on the set of th | 5 | Security group name: | launch-wizard-5 | | | | |
| SSH TCP 22 Custom • 0.0.0.0/0 SSH Image: S | | Description: | launch-wizard-5 | created 2018-04-11T15:4 | 1:40.046-07:00 | | |
| HTTPS TCP 443 Custom • 0.0.0.0/0, ::/0 GUI access S Add Rule Marring Rules with source of 0.0.0.00 allow all IP addresses to access your instance. We recommend setting security group rules to allow access from known IP addresses S | Туре () | Protocol (i) | Port Range (j) | Source () | | Description (j) | |
| Add Rule Add Rule Warning Rules with source of 0.0.0.0/0 allow all IP addresses to access your instance. We recommend setting security group rules to allow access from known IP addresses | SSH • | TCP | 22 | Custom • | 0.0.0/0 | SSH | 8 |
| Warning Rules with source of 0.0.0.0/0 allow all IP addresses to access your instance. We recommend setting security group rules to allow access from known IP addresses | HTTPS • | TCP | 443 | Custom | 0.0.0/0, ::/0 | GUI access | 8 |
| | Warning | ource of 0.0.0.0/0 allow a | II IP addresses to ac | ccess your instance. We | ecommend setting security gro | up rules to allow access from know | n IP addresses |

- 9. Click Review and Launch. If everything looks good, go to next by clicking Launch.
- **10.** Then select the appropriate keypair, then click *Launch Instance*. It may take 15 to 30 minutes to deploy the instance. To access the FortiGate and complete post-install setup, see Connecting to the FortiGate.

| Instance Type | Select an existing key pair or create a new key pair | × | Network Performance |
|-------------------------------|---|----|-----------------------|
| t2.micro | A key pair consists of a public key that AWS stores, and a private key file that you store. Together, | | Low to Moderate |
| Security Grou | they allow you to connect to your instance securely. For Windows AMIs, the private key file is required obtain the password used to log into your instance. For Linux AMIs, the private key file allows you to securely SSH indo your instance. | to | Edit security groups |
| Security group Description | Note: The selected key pair will be added to the set of keys authorized for this instance. Learn more about removing existing key pairs from a public AMI. | | |
| Type (i) | Choose an existing key pair 🔹 | | Description (i) |
| SSH | Select a key pair -ftnt-ohio | | SSH |
| Custom TCP R | | | GUI access |
| Custom TCP R | I acknowledge that I have access to the selected private key file (jkato-ftnt-ohio.pem), and that without this file, I won't be able to log into my instance. | | GUI access |
| | | _ | Edit instance details |
| Custom TCP R | that without this file, I won't be able to log into my instance. | | |

Deploying on AWS China

Deploying FortiGate-VM for AWS China has separate requirements than deploying FortiGate-VM for global AWS. To use AWS resources on AWS China, you must have an AWS China account separate from your global AWS account.

FortiGate-VM for AWS China only supports the BYOL licensing model. To activate it, you must obtain a license. Complete the following steps to deploy FortiGate-VM on AWS China:

- 1. Creating a support account on page 12
- 2. Creating a VPC and subnets on page 31
- 3. Attaching the new VPC Internet gateway on page 31
- 4. Launching the instance with shared FortiGate-VM AMI on page 32
- 5. Connecting to the FortiGate-VM on page 33

Creating a VPC and subnets

This section shows you how to create an AWS VPC and create two subnets in it. For many steps, you have a choice to make that can be specific to your own environment.

- 1. Change your language to English and log into the AWS Management Console.
- 2. Go to Services > Networking > VPC.
- 3. Go to Virtual Private Cloud > Your VPCs, then select Create VPC.
- 4. In the Name tag field, set the VPC name.
- 5. In the CIDR block field, specify an IPv4 address range for your VPC.
- 6. In the Tenancy field, select Default.
- 7. Select Yes, Create.
- 8. Go to *Virtual Private Cloud* > *Subnets*, then select *Create Subnet*. Create a public subnet (in this example, *Subnet1*) and a private subnet (*Subnet2*), as shown in this example. Both subnets belong to the VPC that you created.

| I ise the CIDR format to spec | cify your subnet's IP address block (e.g., 10.0. | 0.0/24) Note that block eize |
|--|--|--|
| | nask and /28 netmask. Also, note that a subne | , |
| Name tag | Public-FortiGate | 0 |
| VPC | vpc-69522e0d FortiGateVPC 🛟 🚺 | |
| Availability Zone | No Preference 🗘 🕄 | |
| CIDR block | 10.0.0/24 | 8 |
| Create Subnet | 10.0.0.24 | Cancel Yes, Create |
| | cify your subnet's IP address block (e.g., 10.0. ask and /28 netmask. Also, note that a subne | Cancel Yes, Create 0.0/24). Note that block size |
| Use the CIDR format to spec must be between a /16 netrr | cify your subnet's IP address block (e.g., 10.0. | Cancel Yes, Create 0.0/24). Note that block size |
| Use the CIDR format to spec must be between a /16 netrr | cify your subnet's IP address block (e.g., 10.0. | Cancel Yes, Create 0.0/24). Note that block size |
| Use the CIDR format to spec must be between a /16 netrr your VPC. | cify your subnet's IP address block (e.g., 10.0. nask and /28 netmask. Also, note that a subne | Cancel Yes, Create 0.0/24). Note that block size t can be the same size as |
| Use the CIDR format to spec must be between a /16 netm your VPC. Name tag | cify your subnet's IP address block (e.g., 10.0. nask and /28 netmask. Also, note that a subne Private | Cancel Yes, Create 0.0/24). Note that block size t can be the same size as |

Attaching the new VPC Internet gateway

This section shows how to connect the new VPC to the Internet gateway. If you are using the default VPC, the Internet gateway should already exist.

- 1. Go to Virtual Private Cloud > Internet Gateways, then select Create internet Gateway.
- 2. In the Name tag field, set the Internet gateway name, then select Create.
- 3. Select the Internet gateway, then select Attach to VPC.
- 4. Select the created VPC and select Attach. The Internet gateway state changes from detached to attached.

Launching the instance with shared FortiGate-VM AMI

To launch the instance with FortiGate-VM AMI:

- 1. In the Services-EC2 Dashboard, go to INSTANCES > Instances, then select Launch Instance.
- 2. Select AWS Marketplace. Search for FortiGate. Click Select.
- 3. Select an instance type, then select Next: Configure Instance Details.
- **4.** Configure the instance details:
 - a. In the Network field, select the VPC you created.
 - **b.** In the Subnet field, select the public subnet.
 - c. In the *Network interfaces* section, you see the entry for eth0 that was created for the public subnet. Select *Add Device* to add another network interface (in this example, eth1), and select the private subnet.
 - **d.** When you have two network interfaces, a global IP address is not assigned automatically. You must manually assign a global IP address later. Select *Review and Launch*, then select *Launch*.
 - e. Select an existing key pair or create a new key pair. Select the acknowledgment checkbox. Select *Launch Instances*.
 - f. To easily identify the instance, set a name for it in the Name field.
 - **g.** Go to NETWORK & SECURITY > Elastic IPs, select a global IP address that is available for use. Select Actions > Allocate new address. If you do not have a global IP address available to use, create one.

| Operated by NWCD | Beijing Region Operated by Sinnet | vices v Edit v | | |
|--|--------------------------------------|----------------------------|-----------------|------------|
| NETWORK & SECURITY Security Groups Elastic IPs | Allocate new addres | S Actions V | rd | |
| Placement Groups Key Pairs Network Interfaces | | | You c | |
| Addresses > Allocate new | | | | |
| Allocate a new Elastic IP ac | | e in which it will be used | | |
| | | | | Cancel |
| NETWORK & SECURITY Security Groups | Allocate new addres | s Actions A | | |
| Elastic IPs Placement Groups | Q Filter by tags and a | Associate address | cation ID | - Instance |
| Key Pairs Network Interfaces | | 54.223.92.108 e | palloc-cc787ff6 | |

- h. In the Resource type section, select Network Interface.
- i. In the Network interface field, select the Interface ID of the network interface that you created for the public subnet (in this example, eth0). In the Private IP field, select the IP address that belongs to the public subnet. To find these values, go to the EC2 Management Console, select Instances, and select the interface in the Network interfaces section in the lower pane of the page (Interface ID and Private IP Address fields). Select Associate. A message is displayed indicating the address association was successful. Note that if the Internet Gateway isn't associated with a VPC, the elastic IP assignment will fail.

| Q, Filter by tags a | and attributes or se | a Interface ID VPC ID | <u>eni-e37f6cb8</u> vpc-69522e0d | | 1 to | 50 of 52 | > | > | |
|-------------------------------|---|--|-------------------------------------|---------------|----------|----------|-------|---|--|
| Name | | VPC ID Attachment Owner | 321536109689 | | . | Instance | State | | |
| | | Attachment Status | attached | | | | | | |
| FortiGate 1 | | Attachment Time | Mon May 14 20:19:24 GMT+800 | | | 🔵 runni | ng | | |
| | | | 2018 | | | stopp | bed | _ | |
| | | Delete on Terminate | true | | | stopp | bed | | |
| | | Private IP Address | 10.0.0.150 | | | stopp | bed | | |
| | 1000 | Private DNS Name | - 54.223.92.168 | | | stopp | bed | | |
| | | Elastic IP Address Source/Dest. Check | 54.223.92.168 true | | | stopp | bed | | |
| | | Description | Primary network interface | | | stopp | | | |
| | | Security Groups | launch-wizard-22 | | | stop | | - | |
| | | | | | | - atop | -M | | |
| Ne | etwork interfaces | eth0 eth1 | IAM role | - | | | | | |
| So | urce/dest. check | True | Key pair name | dev_cr | | | | | |
| sociate a | ddress | e to which you want to associa | ate this Elastic IP address (54.223 | .92.168 |) | | | | |
| esses > Associat SOCIATE A | ddress | | | 9.92.168 |) | | | | |
| sociate a | ddress | Instance Network interface |) | 92.168 |) | | | | |
| sociate a | Resource type | Instance Network interface eni-e37f6cb8 |) | - |) | | | | |
| sociate a | iddress a network interfac Resource type Vetwork interface | Instance Instance |) | C 0 |) | | | | |
| sociate a of the instance OF | address i network interfac Resource type Vetwork interfac Private II Reassociation | Instance Instance | C | 2 2 0 0 | - | more. | | | |

Connecting to the FortiGate-VM

To connect to the FortiGate-VM, you need your login credentials, the FortiGate-VM's EIP, SSH client, and an FTP server.

The default username is admin and the default password is the instance ID.

1. You can find the public IP address in the EC2 management console. Select *Instances* and look at the *Public IP* field in the lower pane.

| | | | | | _ | 0. | |
|-----------------|--|---|------------------------------|-------------------------|-----------------|----------|------|
| Q Filter by tag | s and attributes or se | earch by keyword | | G |) K < 1 to | 50 of 52 | > |
| Name | | Instance ID | ✓ Instan | ce Type 👻 Availa | ability Zone 👻 | Instance | Stat |
| FortiGate | 1 | i-0178b7ae44 | 16cd92a6 t2.micr | o cn-no | rth-1a | 🔵 runnin | g |
| | | | | | | | 1 |
| 1.000 | | | | | | | |
| 1000 | | 10000 | And in the second | | | | ÷. |
| | | | | | | | |
| _ | | | | | | - | |
| Instance: i-01 | 78b7ae446cd92a6 | (FortiGate 1) Elastic | IP: 54.223.92.168 | | | | 5 0 |
| - | | . , | | | | | 5 (|
| Instance: i-01 | 78b7ae446cd92a6 Status Checks | (FortiGate 1) Elastic Monitoring Tags | | | | | 9 0 |
| - | | . , | | Public DNS | | | 5 0 |
| - | Status Checks | Monitoring Tags | | | - 54.223.92.168 | | 9 0 |
| - | Status Checks Instance ID | Monitoring Tags i-0178b7ae446cd92a6 | | Public DNS | | 7 | 5 0 |
| - | Status Checks Instance ID Instance state | Monitoring Tags i-0178b7ae446cd92a6 running | | Public DNS Public IP | 54.223.92.168 | 7 | 3 6 |

2. Each public IP address in China should obtain an ICP license. Otherwise it cannot be visited by ports 80, 443, and 8080. You cannot initially access the FortiGate-VM web GUI via the default HTTPS port. You can access the FortiGate-VM via SSH, then upload a BYOL license to the FortiGate-VM via FTP or TFTP. After activating the FortiGate-VM, you can modify the default admin HTTPS port to any port, such as 8443. Then you can go to the FortiGate-VM via https://<FortiGate-VM EIP>:8443.



The default password is the instance ID as seen below.



- 3. Set up an FTP/TFTP server and ensure the FortiGate can log onto and download a BYOL license from it.
- 4. On the FortiGate, use one of the following CLI commands to restore the VM license.

```
exec restore vmlicense tftp <license file name> <IP address>
exec restore vmlicense ftp <license name (path) on the remote server> <ftp server
address>[:ftp port]
```



If the license installation is successful, the FortiGate-VM reboots automatically. After it restarts, log in.

5. Change the default port to any port, such as 8443. Do not use ports 443, 8080, or 80.

6. You will now see the FortiGate-VM dashboard. Depending on your license type, the information in the license widget on the dashboard may vary.

| \leftarrow \rightarrow C A Not Secure h | ttps:// | 5 4.223.92.168 844 | 3/ng/system/dashboard/1 | | | | ☆ 🗵 🔇 | 0 🖸 🖬 |
|---|---------|---------------------------|-------------------------|---|-----------------------------|-----|-----------------|------------|
| FortiGate VM64-AWS | FG\ | /M0 ministration | 14 | | | | <u></u> | _ [] admir |
| 🚯 Dashboard | > | System Inform | nation | ; | Licenses | | Virtual Machine | 1 |
| 🔆 Security Fabric | > | | | | | | | |
| E FortiView | > | Hostname | FGVM0 | | FortiCare Support | | FGVM04 License | |
| + Network | > | Serial Number | FGVM0 | | IPS | | Allocated vCPUs | 1/4 |
| System | > | Firmware | v5.6.3 build1547 (GA) | | AntiVirus | | 25% | |
| Policy & Objects | > | Mode | NAT (Flow-based) | | Web Filtering | | Allocated RAM | 996 MiB |
| Security Profiles | > | System Time | 2018/05/14 19:49:24 | | | | | |
| 므 VPN | > | Uptime | 00:00:10:12 | | Mobile Malware | | | |
| User & Device | > | WAN IP | Unknown | | FortiClient 0/10 FortiToken | 0/0 | | |
| 🗢 WiFi & Switch Controller | > | | | | | | | |
| H Log C Doport | | | | | | | | |

7. Select *Network > Interfaces*, and edit the interfaces, if required. If the IP address or subnet mask is missing for port 1 or port 2, configure these values.

| FortiGate VM64-AWS FGVM320000103040 | | | | | | ↓• ⑦• >_ [] admin• | | |
|---|-----|--------------|--|------------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------|-------------------------|-----------|
| Dashboard Security Fabric FortiView | | CIRTINET. | | 3 5 7 6 6 6 6 6 4 6 | | | | |
| + Network | ~ 4 | Create Ne | w▼ | dit 🔒 Dele | te | By Type By | Role Alpha | betically |
| Interfaces | ☆ | ▼ Status | T Name | T Members | T IP/Netmask | т Туре | T Access | T Ref. |
| DNS | P | Physical (2) | | | | | | |
| Packet Capture | | | and the second sec | | | | PING | |
| SD-WAN | | o | port1 | | 10.0.0.220 255.255.255.0 | Physical Interface | HTTPS SSH FMG-Access | 0 |
| SD-WAN Status Check | | 0 | port2 | | 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0 | Physical Interface | | 0 |
| SD-WAN Rules | | | | | | | | |
| Static Routes | | | | | | | | |
| Policy Routes Q | 100 | | | | | | | |
| Edit Interface |
|--|
| |
| Interface Name port2 (06:58:3A:40:25:3B) |
| Alias |
| Link Status Up 🕢 |
| Type Physical Interface |
| Role 🜖 Undefined 👻 |
| Address |
| Addressing mode Manual DHCP One-Arm Sniffer Dedicated to FortiSwitch |
| IP/Network Mask 10.0.1.5/24 |
| Restrict Access |
| Administrative Access V HTTPS PING FMG-Access CAPWAP SSH SNMP RADIUS Accounting FortiTelemetry |
| DHCP Server |
| Networked Devices |
| Device Detection |
| Admission Control |
| Security Mode None |
| Miscellaneous |
| Scan Outgoing Connections to Botnet Sites Disable Block Monitor |
| Secondary IP Address |
| OK Cancel |

Upgrading the FortiGate-VM

For the recommended upgrade path, see the FortiOS Version Upgrade Path. Select *FortiGate-VM-AWS*, and the current and target upgrade versions.

For upgrade instructions, see Upgrading the firmware.

Backing up and restoring configuration

See Configuration backups.

Deploying auto scaling on AWS

You can deploy FortiGate virtual machines (VMs) to support Auto Scaling on AWS. Optionally, AWS Transit Gateway can be used to connect Amazon Virtual Private Clouds (Amazon VPCs) and their on-premises networks to a single gateway. This integration extends the FortiGate protection to all networks connected to the Transit Gateway. Consolidate logging and reporting for your FortiGate cluster by integrating FortiAnalyzer. Fortinet provides FortiGate Autoscale for AWS deployment packages to facilitate the deployment.

Multiple FortiGate-VM instances form an Auto Scaling group to provide highly efficient clustering at times of high workloads. FortiGate-VM instances can be scaled out automatically according to predefined workload levels. When a spike in traffic occurs, FortiGate-VM instances are automatically added to the Auto Scaling group. Auto Scaling is achieved by using FortiGate-native High Availability (HA) features that synchronize operating system (OS) configurations across multiple FortiGate-VM instances at the time of scale-out events.

FortiGate Autoscale for AWS is available with FortiOS 6.2.5, FortiOS 6.4.6, FortiOS 7.0.0, and FortiOS 7.0.1 and supports any combination of On-demand and Bring Your Own License (BYOL) instances. FortiAnalyzer 6.4.6 can be incorporated into Fortinet FortiGate Autoscale to use extended features that include storing logs into FortiAnalyzer.



Fees will be incurred based on the Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instance type. Additionally, a license is required for each FortiGate Bring Own License (BYOL) instance you may use.

FortiGate Autoscale for AWS uses AWS CloudFormation Templates (CFTs) to deploy components.

Deployments without Transit Gateway integration have:

- A highly available architecture that spans two Availability Zones.*
- An Amazon VPC configured with public and private subnets according to AWS best practices, to provide you with your own virtual network on AWS.*
- An Internet gateway to allow access to the Internet.*
- In the public subnets:
 - (Optional) A FortiAnalyzer instance, which consolidates logging and reporting for your FortiGate cluster.
 - Two or more FortiGate-VM instances, which complement AWS security groups. Security groups provide intrusion protection, web filtering, and threat detection to help protect your services from cyberattacks. Each instance also provides VPN access for authorized users. VPN connections use the Diffie-Hellman Group 14 and SHA256 (Secure Hash Algorithm 2).
 - A cluster of FortiGate-VM instances in the Auto Scaling groups, where one FortiGate-VM acts as the primary while the others act as secondary. The primary FortiGate-VM also acts as NAT gateway by default, allowing egress Internet access for resources in the private subnets.
- A public-facing network load balancer that distributes inbound traffic across the FortiGate-VM instances. An internal-facing network load balancer is optional.
- AWS Lambda, which provides the core Auto Scaling functionality between FortiGates-VM instances.
- Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) to host artifacts for Lambda functions and logs.
- Amazon DynamoDB to store information about Auto Scaling condition states.

* When deploying into an existing VPC, the marked components in the above list are not created - you are prompted for your existing VPC configuration.

Deployments with Transit Gateway integration have:

- A highly available architecture that spans two Availability Zones.
- An Amazon VPC configured with public and private subnets according to AWS best practices, to provide you with your own virtual network on AWS.
- An Internet gateway to allow access to the Internet.
- In the public subnets:
 - (Optional) A FortiAnalyzer instance, which consolidates logging and reporting for your FortiGate cluster.
 - Two or more FortiGate-VM instances, which complement AWS security groups. Security groups provide intrusion protection, web filtering, and threat detection to help protect your services from cyberattacks. Each instance also provides VPN access for authorized users. VPN connections use the Diffie-Hellman Group 14 and SHA256 (Secure Hash Algorithm 2).
 - A primary FortiGate-VM instance in the Auto Scaling group(s).
- AWS Lambda, which provides the core Auto Scaling functionality between FortiGate-VM instances.
- Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) to host artifacts for Lambda functions and logs.
- Amazon DynamoDB to store information about Auto Scaling condition states.
- Site-to-Site VPN connections.

Planning

This deployment requires familiarity with the configuration of a FortiGate using the CLI as well as with the following AWS services:

- Amazon Elastic Cloud Compute (Amazon EC2)
- Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling
- Amazon VPC
- AWS CloudFormation
- AWS Lambda
- Amazon DynamoDB
- Amazon API Gateway
- Amazon CloudWatch
- Amazon S3

If deploying with Transit Gateway integration, knowledge of the following is also required:

- AWS Transit Gateway
- Border Gateway Protocol (BGP)
- Equal-cost multi-path (ECMP)

If you are new to AWS, visit the Getting Started Resource Center and the AWS Training and Certification website.

It is expected that FortiGate Autoscale for AWS will be deployed by DevOps engineers or advanced system administrators who are familiar with the above.

Technical requirements

To start the deployment, you must have an AWS account. If you do not already have one, create one at https://aws.amazon.com/ by following the on-screen instructions. Part of the sign-up process involves receiving a phone call and entering a PIN. Your AWS account is automatically signed up for all AWS services. You are charged only for the services you use.

Log into your AWS account and verify the following:

- *IAM permissions*. Ensure that the AWS user deploying the template has sufficient permissions to perform the required service actions on resources. At a minimum, the following are required: *Service*: IAM; *Actions*:CreateRole; *Resource*: *. The FortiGate Autoscale for AWS template increases the security level of the deployment stack by narrowing down the scope of access to external resources belonging to the same user account as well as restricting access to resources within the deployment.
- *Region*. Use the region selector in the navigation bar to choose the AWS region where you want to deploy FortiGate Autoscale for AWS.



This deployment includes AWS Auto Scaling, which isn't currently supported in all AWS Regions. For a current list of supported Regions, refer to the AWS documentation Service Endpoints and Quotas.

- Instance Type. This deployment offers a range of instance types, some of which are not currently supported in all AWS Regions. Ensure that your desired instance type is available in your region by checking the Instance types page for your region.
- FortiGate subscription(s). Confirm that you have a valid subscription to the On-demand FortiGate and/or BYOL FortiGate marketplace listings, as required for your deployment.
 - If you are not subscribed, open the subscription page and click Continue to Subscribe.
 - Review the terms and conditions for software usage, and then choose *Accept Terms*. A confirmation page loads, and an email confirmation is sent to the account owner.
 - Exit out of AWS Marketplace without further action. Do not provision the software from AWS Marketplace.
- Key pair. Ensure at least one Amazon EC2 key pair exists in your AWS account in the region where you plan to deploy FortiGate Autoscale for AWS. Make note of the key pair name.
- *Resources.* If necessary, request service quota increases. This is necessary when you may exceed the default quotas with this deployment. The Service Quotas console displays your usage and quotas for some aspects of some services. For more information, see the AWSdocumentation. The default instance type is *c5.large*.
- FortiGate licenses. Ensure you have a license for each FortiGate BYOL instance you may use. Licenses can be purchased from FortiCare. In the section BYOL license files on page 44, you will place the license files in an S3 bucket for use by the deployment.

Requirements when using an existing VPC

When using an existing VPC, there are additional requirements:

- The VPC must have the DNS hostnames option enabled.
- · Each availability zone in the VPC must have at least one public subnet and at least one private subnet.
- A VPC endpoint for the execute-api service under the AWS services category is required. This VPC endpoint must have the *Private DNS Name* option enabled and must be associated with the VPC:



After deployment, you must associate the created security group with the VPC endpoint. For details, see Postdeployment activities on page 62.

Obtaining the deployment package

The FortiGate Autoscale for AWS deployment package is located in the Fortinet GitHub project.

To obtain the deployment package, use one of the following:

- Download the package aws-cloudformation.zip directly from the GitHub project release page.
- Manually generate the deployment package in your local workspace:
 - a. From the GitHub project release page, download the source code (.zip or .tar.gz) for the latest version.
 - **b.** Extract the source code into the project directory in your local workspace.
 - c. Run ${\tt npm}$ install to initialize the project at the project root directory.
 - **d.** Run npm run build-artifacts to generate the local deployment package. The deployment package *aws-cloudformation.zip* will be available in the *dist/artifacts* directory.

Once you have the deployment package aws-cloudformation.zip:

1. Unzip the file on your local PC. The following files and folders will be extracted:

| Name 🔺 | Size | Modified |
|-----------|-----------|----------|
| assets | 1 item | 20:09 |
| functions | 1 item | 20:09 |
| README.md | 609 bytes | 20:09 |
| templates | 14 items | 20:09 |

- 2. Log into your AWS account.
- 3. In the Amazon S3 service, create an S3 bucket as the root folder for your deployment. In the example below, the folder is named *fortigate-autoscale*.
- 4. Inside this folder, create another folder to store the deployment resources. In the example below, this folder is named *deployment-package*.
- 5. Navigate to this second folder and upload the files and folders you extracted in step 2 to this location. In the example

| azon S3 > fortigate-autoso | cale > deployment-p | ackage | |
|---------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-----------|-------------------|
| ligate autoscale | | | |
| Overview | | | |
| | | | |
| Q Type a prefix and press Ente | r to search. Press ESC to | clear. | |
| | | | |
| Upload 🕂 Create folder | Download Actio | ns 🗸 US V | Vest (Oregon) 🛛 😂 |
| | | | Viewing 1 to 4 |
| | | | Viewing 1 to 4 |
| Name ▼ | Last modified | Size 🔻 | Storage class ▼ |
| assets | | | |
| functions | | | |
| templates | | | |
| README.md | Aug 26, 2020 2:22:46 PM GMT-0700 | 609.0 B | Standard |

BYOL license files

If you will be using BYOL instances, the deployment package will look for FortiGate license files in a location that ends with *license-files* > *fortigate*. This location can created within the *assets* folder of the deployment package location or within a custom asset location.



If a custom asset location is used, you must specify the location in the parameters described in the table Custom asset location configuration on page 58.

Examples:

• If the deployment package is located at Amazon S3 > fortigate-autoscale > deployment-package, license files would be uploaded to Amazon S3 > fortigate-autoscale > deployment-package > assets> license-files > fortigate.

• If you will be storing license files in a custom S3 location and you have created the S3 bucket *custom-s3-bucket-name* with the directory *custom-asset-directory*, you would upload the license files to *Amazon S3 > custom-s3-bucket-name > custom-asset-directory > license-files > fortigate*.

Deploying the CloudFormation templates

FortiGate Autoscale for AWS can be deployed:

- with Transit Gateway integration (using a new Transit Gateway or integrating with your existing Transit Gateway). This option builds a new AWS environment consisting of the VPC, subnets, security groups, and other infrastructure components. It then deploys FortiGate Autoscale into this new VPC and attaches this new VPC to the Transit Gateway.
- without Transit Gateway integration. This option allows for deployment into a new VPC or into an existing VPC.

Deployment notes

| Deployment option | Notes |
|---|---|
| with Transit Gateway integration (new VPC only) | One inbound route domain and one outbound route domain will be created for the new or existing Transit Gateway. FortiGate Autoscale for AWS will be attached to the Transit Gateway. |
| into an existing VPC | Incoming requests go through a connection that flows through the internet gateway, Network Load Balancer, and FortiGate Auto Scaling group before reaching the protected instances in the private subnets in your existing VPC. The protected instances return a response using the same connection. Outgoing requests from the protected instances go through one FortiGate-VM instance in an Auto Scaling group and the internet gateway to the public network. The public network returns the response using the same path. |
| | FortiGate Autoscale will manage the 0.0.0.0/0 route for overall egress traffic. For details on using other NAT gateways refer to the section How to partially route egress traffic on page 83. |

To deploy the CloudFormation templates:

- 1. Navigate to the S3 folder you uploaded files to in the previous section. In the example below, we navigate to Amazon S3 > fortigate-autoscale > deployment-package.
- 2. Click templates and select the appropriate entry template to start the deployment. To deploy:
 - with Transit Gateway integration, click autoscale-tgw-new-vpc.template.yaml
 - without Transit Gateway integration, click autoscale-new-vpc.template.yaml to deploy into a new VPC
 - without Transit Gateway integration, click autoscale-existing-vpc.template.yaml to deploy into an existing VPC

| Amazon S3 > fortigate-autoscale > dep | oloyment-package > templates | | |
|---|--|--------------------------|---|
| fortigate-autoscale | | | |
| | | | |
| Overview | | | |
| Q Type a prefix and press Enter to search. Pre | ess ESC to clear. | | |
| prefix autoscale 🗙 | | | |
| | | | |
| 1 Upload + Create folder Download | Actions ~ | US West | (Oregon) 2 |
| L Upload + Create folder Download | Actions ~ | | (Oregon) 2 |
| Opload Create folder Download Download | Last modified ▼ | | |
| | | < V | /iewing 1 to 4 |
| □ Name ▼ | Last modified ▼ | ⊂ V Size ▼ | /iewing 1 to 4 Storage class ▼ |
| Name ▼ autoscale-existing-vpc.template.yaml | Last modified - Aug 17, 2020 10:46:28 PM GMT-0700 | Size ▼ 41.4 KB | /iewing 1 to 4 Storage class ▼ Standard |

3. Copy the *Object URL* of the template you picked in the previous step. In our example, the template chosen is for deploying into a new VPC.

| Overview | Properties | Permissions | Select from | |
|---|--------------------|-------------|-------------|--|
| Open Downlo | ad Download as | Make public | Copy path | |
| Owner | 1007774-000501-074 | | | |
| .ast modified Aug 17, 2020 10:46: | 27 PM GMT-0700 | | | |
| tag | w20077w20050x279 | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| storage class Standard Server-side encryp Jone | tion | | | |
| Standard Server-side encryp | tion | | | |

- 4. Click Services, and then Management & Governance > CloudFormation.
- 5. Confirm the region you are in and then click *Create Stack > With new resources (standard)*.

| aws Services | 🗸 Resource Groups 🗸 🔦 | Д • | ← Oreg | jon 👻 Support |
|----------------------|-----------------------|------------------------------------|--------|---------------|
| CloudFormation > Sta | acks | | | |
| Stacks (III) | C Delete Upda | te Stack actions With new resource | | e stack 🔺 |
| Q. Active | Vie | With existing res | . , | resources) |

6. Paste the Object URL from step 3 into the Amazon S3 URL field as shown below.

CloudFormation > Stacks > Create stack

| | ate | |
|--|--|---|
| Prepare template Every stack is based on a template. A templa vant to include in the stack. | te is a JSON or YAML file that contains configurat | ion information about the AWS resources you |
| • Template is ready | O Use a sample template | O Create template in Designer |
| A template is a JSON or YAML file that descri Femplate source Selecting a template generates an Amazon S | | |
| • Amazon S3 URL | O Upload a ter | nplate file |
| • Amazon S3 URL | O Upload a ter | nplate file |
| Amazon S3 URL | St-2.amazonaws.com/deployment-packag | |

- 7. Click Next.
- 8. On the *Specify stack details* page, enter a stack name and review parameters for the template, providing values for parameters that require input.

| Stack name | 2 |
|---|--|
| Stack name | |
| Enter a stack | name |
| Stack name can in | nclude letters (A-Z and a-z), numbers (0-9), and dashes (-). |
| Parameters are de | efined in your template and allow you to input custom values when you create or update a stack. |
| Parameters are de | efined in your template and allow you to input custom values when you create or update a stack. ging configuration |
| Parameters are de Resource tago Resource tag p The ResourceGroi | efined in your template and allow you to input custom values when you create or update a stack. ging configuration |
| Resource tagg Resource tag p The ResourceGrou Letters, uppercase | efined in your template and allow you to input custom values when you create or update a stack. ging configuration refix up Tag Key used on all resources and as the name prefix of all applicable resources. Can only contain numbers, lowercase e letters, ampersat(@), hyphens (-), period (.), and hash (#). Max length is 50. |

CFT parameters

The following sections provide descriptions of the available parameters. Some parameters are specific to certain templates, and are only displayed when that template is selected.

After entering required parameters, click Next.

Resource tagging configuration

| Parameter label (name) | Default | Description |
|--|-------------------|--|
| Resource tag prefix (ResourceTagPrefix) | Requires input | <i>ResourceGroup</i> Tag Key used on all resources and as the name prefix of all applicable resources. Can only contain uppercase letters, lowercase letters, numbers, ampersand (@), hyphens (-), period (.), and hash (#). Maximum length is 50. |
| Resource name prefix (CustomIdentifier) | fgtASG | Alternative name prefix to be used on a resource that the <i>Resource tag prefix</i> cannot apply to. Can only contain uppercase letters, lowercase letters, and numbers. Maximum length is 10. |

Network configuration (New VPC, no Transit Gateway)

| Parameter label (name) | Default | Description |
|---|----------------|--|
| Availability Zones (AvailabilityZones) | Requires input | List of Availability Zones to use for the subnets in the VPC. The FortiGate Autoscale solution uses two Availability Zones from your list and preserves the logical order you specify. |
| VPC CIDR (VpcCidr) | 192.168.0.0/16 | Classless Inter-Domain Routing (CIDR) block for the FortiGate Autoscale VPC. |
| Autoscale subnet 1 CIDR (PublicSubnet1Cidr) | 192.168.0.0/24 | CIDR block for the subnet located in Availability Zone 1 where FortiGate Autoscale instances will be deployed to. |
| Autoscale subnet 2 CIDR (PublicSubnet2Cidr) | 192.168.1.0/24 | CIDR block for the subnet located in Availability Zone 2 where FortiGate Autoscale instances will be deployed to. |
| <pre>Protected subnet 1 CIDR (PrivateSubnet1Cidr)</pre> | 192.168.2.0/24 | CIDR block for the private subnet located in Availability Zone 1 where it is protected by the FortiGate-VMs in the public subnet of the same Availability Zone. |
| <pre>Protected subnet 2 CIDR (PrivateSubnet2Cidr)</pre> | 192.168.3.0/24 | CIDR block for the private subnet located in Availability Zone 2 where it is protected by the FortiGate-VMs in the public subnet of the same Availability Zone. |

Network configuration (Existing VPC, no Transit Gateway)

| Parameter label (name) | Default | Description |
|--|-------------------|---|
| VPCID(VpcId) | Requires input | ID of the existing VPC where FortiGate Autoscale will be deployed. The VPC must have the option <i>DNS hostnames</i> enabled and each of the two Availability Zones in the VPC must have at least 1 public subnet and at least 1 private subnet. |
| VPC CIDR (VpcCidr) | Requires input | CIDR block of the selected existing VPC into which FortiGate Autoscale will be deployed. This can be found in parentheses in the VPC ID parameter selection. |
| Private VPC Endpoint (VpcEndpointId) | Requires input | ID of the Private VPC Endpoint associated with the existing VPC. A Private VPC Endpoint is required for FortiGate Autoscale and is a VPC Endpoint that has enabled <i>Private DNS names</i> . |
| Autoscale subnet 1 ID (PublicSubnet1) | Requires input | ID of the public subnet 1 located in Availability Zone 1 of the selected existing VPC. The FortiGate Autoscale instances will be deployed here. |
| Autoscale subnet 2 ID (PublicSubnet2) | Requires input | ID of the public subnet 2 located in Availability Zone 2 of the selected existing VPC. The FortiGate Autoscale instances will be deployed here. |

| Parameter label (name) | Default | Description |
|---|-------------------|--|
| <pre>Private subnet 1 ID (PrivateSubnet1)</pre> | Requires input | ID of the private subnet 1 located in Availability Zone 1 of the selected existing VPC. This subnet will be protected by the FortiGate-VMs in the public subnet of the same Availability Zone. |
| <pre>Private subnet 2 ID (PrivateSubnet2)</pre> | Requires input | ID of the private subnet 2 located in Availability Zone 2 of the selected existing VPC. This subnet will be protected by the FortiGate-VMs in the public subnet of the same Availability Zone. |
| <pre>Private subnet route table (PrivateSubnetRouteTable)</pre> | Requires input | ID of the route table associated with the two private subnets. |

Network configuration (Transit Gateway integration)

| Parameter label (name) | Default | Description |
|--|----------------|--|
| Availability Zones (AvailabilityZones) | Requires input | The list of Availability Zones to use for the subnets in the VPC. The FortiGate Autoscale solution uses two Availability Zones from your list and preserves the logical order you specify. |
| VPC CIDR (VpcCidr) | 192.168.0.0/16 | The Classless Inter-Domain Routing (CIDR) block for the FortiGate Autoscale VPC. |
| Autoscale subnet 1 CIDR (PublicSubnet1Cidr) | 192.168.0.0/24 | The CIDR block for the subnet located in Availability Zone 1 where FortiGate Autoscale instances will be deployed to. |
| Autoscale subnet 2 CIDR (PublicSubnet2Cidr) | 192.168.1.0/24 | The CIDR block for the subnet located in Availability Zone 2 where FortiGate Autoscale instances will be deployed to. |

FortiGate configuration

| Parameter label (name) | Default | Description | | |
|--|-------------------|---|--|--|
| <pre>Instance type (FortiGateInstanceType)</pre> | c5.large | Instance type for the FortiGate-VMs in the Auto Scaling group. There are t2.small and compute-optimized instances such as c4 and c5 available with different vCPU sizes and bandwidths. For more information about instance types, see Instance Types. | | |
| FortiOS version (FortiOSVersion) | 7.0.1 | FortiOS version supported by FortiGate Autoscale for AWS. Requires one or more subscriptions to Fortinet FortiGate on-demand or BYOL AMIs. | | |
| FortiGate PSK secret (FortiGatePskSecret) | Requires input | Secret preshared key used by the FortiGate-VM instances to securely communicate with each other. Must contain numbers and letters and may contain special characters. Maximum length is 128. | | |

| Parameter label (name) | Default | Description | | |
|------------------------------------|--|--|--|--|
| | | Changes to the PSK secret after FortiGate Autoscale for AWS has been deployed are not reflected here. For new instances to be spawned with the changed PSK secret, this environment variable will need to be manually updated. | | |
| Admin port (FortiGateAdminPort) | 8443 | A port number for FortiGate administration. Minimum is 1. Maximum is 65535. Do not use the FortiGate reserved ports 443, 541, 514, or 703. | | |
| Admin CIDR block Requires | | CIDR block for external administrator management access. | | |
| (FortiGateAdminCidr) input | 0.0.0.0/0 accepts connections from any IP address. Use a constrained CIDR range to reduce the potential of inbound attacks from unknown IP addresses. | | | |
| Keypairname (KeyPairName) | Requires input | Amazon EC2 Key Pair for admin access. | | |
| BGP ASN (BgpAsn) | 65000 | The Border Gateway Protocol (BGP) Autonomous System Number (ASN) of the Customer Gateway of each FortiGate-VM instance in the Auto Scaling group. This value ranges from 64512 to 65534. | | |
| | | Only for deployments with Transit Gateway integration. | | |

FortiGate Auto Scaling group configuration

| Parameter label (name) | Default | Description |
|--|---------|--|
| Farameter laber (mame) | Delault | Description |
| Desired capacity (BYOL) (FgtAsgDesiredCapacityByol) | 2 | Number of FortiGate-VM instances the BYOL Auto Scaling group should have at any time. For High Availability in BYOL-only and Hybrid use cases, ensure at least 2 FortiGate-VMs are in the group. For specific use cases, set to 0 for On-demand-only, and >= 2 for BYOL-only or hybrid licensing. |
| Minimum group size (BYOL) (FgtAsgMinSizeByol) | 2 | Minimum number of FortiGate-VM instances in the BYOL Auto Scaling group. For specific use cases, set to 0 for On- demand-only, and >= 2 for BYOL-only or hybrid licensing. |

| Parameter label (name) | Default | Description |
|--|---------|---|
| | | For BYOL-only and hybrid licensing deployments, this parameter must be at least 2. If it is set to 1 and the instance fails to work, the current FortiGate-VM configuration will be lost. |
| Maximum group size (BYOL) (FgtAsgMaxSizeByol) | 2 | Maximum number of FortiGate-VM instances in the BYOL Auto Scaling group. For specific use cases, set to 0 for On- demand-only, and >= 2 for BYOL-only or hybrid licensing. This number must be greater than or equal to the <i>Minimum</i> <i>group size (BYOL)</i> . |
| Desired capacity (On-demand instances) (FgtAsgDesiredCapacityPayg) | 0 | Number of FortiGate-VM instances the On-demand Auto Scaling group should have at any time. For High Availability in an On-demand-only use case, ensure at least 2 FortiGate- VMs are in the group. For specific use cases, set to 0 for BYOL-only, >= 2 for On-demand-only, and >= 0 for hybrid licensing. |
| Minimum group size (On-demand instances) (FgtAsgMinSizePayg) | 0 | Minimum number of FortiGate-VM instances in the On- demand Auto Scaling group. For specific use cases, set to 0 for BYOL-only, >= 2 for On-demand-only, and >= 0 for hybrid licensing.Image: the system of the s |
| Maximum group size (On-demand instances) (FgtAsgMaxSizePayg) | 0 | Maximum number of FortiGate-VM instances in the On- demand Auto Scaling group. For specific use cases, set to 0 for BYOL-only, >= 2 for On-demand-only, and >= 0 for hybrid licensing. This number must be greater than or equal to the <i>Minimum group size (On-demand instances)</i> . |
| Scale-out threshold (FgtAsgScaleOutThreshold) | 80 | Threshold (in percentage) for the FortiGate Auto Scaling group to scale out (add) 1 instance. Minimum is 1. Maximum is 100. |
| Scale-in threshold (FgtAsgScaleInThreshold) | 25 | Threshold (in percentage) for the FortiGate Auto Scaling group to scale in (remove) 1 instance. Minimum is 1. Maximum is 100. |
| <pre>Primary election timeout (PrimaryElectionTimeout)</pre> | 300 | Maximum time (in seconds) to wait for the election of the primary instance to complete. Minimum is 30. Maximum is 3600. |

| Parameter label (name) | Default | Description |
|--|---------|--|
| Getlicense grace period (GetLicenseGracePeriod) | 600 | Minimum time (in seconds) permitted before a distributed license can be revoked from a non-responsive FortiGate-VM and re-distributed. Minimum is 300. |
| Health check grace period (FgtAsgHealthCheckGracePeriod) | 300 | Length of time (in seconds) that Auto Scaling waits before checking an instance's health status. Minimum is 60. |
| Scaling cooldown period (FgtAsgCooldown) | 300 | Auto Scaling group waits for the cooldown period (in seconds) to complete before resuming scaling activities. Minimum is 60. Maximum is 3600. |
| <pre>Instance lifecycle timeout (LifecycleHookTimeout)</pre> | 480 | Amount of time (in seconds) that can elapse before the FortiGate Autoscale lifecycle hook times out. Minimum is 60. Maximum is 3600. |

Transit Gateway configuration (Transit Gateway integration)

| Parameter label (name) | Default | Description |
|---|------------------------------|--|
| Transit Gateway support (TransitGatewaySupportOptions) | create one | Create a Transit Gateway for the FortiGate Autoscale VPC to attach to, or specify to use an existing one. |
| Transit Gateway ID (TransitGatewayId) | Conditionally requires input | ID of the Transit Gateway that the FortiGate Autoscale VPC will be attached to. Required when <i>Transit</i> <i>Gateway support</i> is set to "use an existing one". |

Load balancing configuration (no Transit Gateway integration)

| Parameter label (name) | Default | Description |
|---|---|---|
| Traffic protocol (LoadBalancingTrafficProtocol) | HTTPS | Protocol used to load balance traffic. |
| <pre>Traffic port (LoadBalancingTrafficPort)</pre> | 443 | Port number used to balance web service traffic if the internal web service load balancer is enabled. Minimum is 1. Maximum is 65535. |
| Health check threshold (LoadBalancingHealthCheckThreshold) | 3 | Number of consecutive health check failures required before considering a FortiGate-VM instance unhealthy. Minimum 3. |
| Internal ELB options (InternalLoadBalancingOptions) | add a new internal load balancer | (Optional) Predefined Elastic Load Balancer (ELB) to route traffic to web service in the private subnets. You can optionally use your own one or decide to not need one. |

| Parameter label (name) | Default | Description |
|---|-------------------|---|
| Health check path (InternalTargetGroupHealthCheckPath) | / | (Optional) Destination path for health checks. This path must begin with a forward slash (/) and can be at most 1024 characters in length. |
| Internal ELB DNS name (InternalLoadBalancerDnsName) | Requires input | (Optional) DNS name of an existing internal load balancer used to route traffic from a FortiGate-VM to targets in a specified target group. Leave it blank if you don't use an existing load balancer. |

Failover management configuration

| Parameter label (name) | Default | Description |
|--|---------|--|
| Heart beat interval (HeartBeatInterval) | 30 | Length of time (in seconds) that a FortiGate-VM instance waits between sending heartbeat requests to the Autoscale handler. Minimum is 30. Maximum is 90. |
| Heart beat loss count (HeartBeatLossCount) | 10 | Number of consecutively lost heartbeats. When the Heartbeat loss count has been reached, the FortiGate-VM is deemed unhealthy and failover activities will commence. |
| Heart beat delay allowance (HeartBeatDelayAllowance) | 2 | Maximum amount of time (in seconds) allowed for network latency of the FortiGate-VM heartbeat arriving at the FortiGate Autoscale handler. Minimum is 0. |
| Autoscale notifications subscriber email (AutoscaleNotificationSubscriberEmail) | - | The email address (AWS SNS Topic subscriber) to receive Autoscale notifications. If provided, the template can only accept one email address. An email will be sent to the address to confirm the subscription. |
| Terminate unhealthy VM (TerminateUnhealthyVm) | no | Set to <i>yes</i> to terminate any VM that is deemed unhealthy by FortiGate Autoscale. |
| Autoscale sync recovery count (SyncRecoveryCount) | 3 | Number of consecutive on-time heartbeats required for a VM to become healthy again. This parameter is only used when <i>Terminate</i> <i>unhealthy VM</i> is set to no and allows for the VM to recover from an unhealthy state. |

FortiAnalyzer integration

| Parameter label (name) | Default | Description |
|---|-------------------|---|
| FortiAnalyzer integration (FortiAnalyzerIntegrationOptions) | yes | Set to <i>no</i> if you do not want to incorporate FortiAnalyzer into FortiGate Autoscale to use extended features that include storing logs into FortiAnalyzer. |
| FortiAnalyzer version (FortiAnalyzerVersion) | 6.4.6 | FortiAnalyzer version supported by FortiGate Autoscale. |
| | | Requires a subscription to the "Fortinet FortiAnalyzer Centralized Logging/Reporting (10 managed devices)" AMI. |
| FortiAnalyzer instance type (FortiAnalyzerInstanceType) | m5.large | Instance type to launch as FortiAnalyzer on- demand instances. There are compute- optimized instances, such as m4 and c4, available with different vCPU sizes and bandwidths. For more information about instance types, see Instance Types. |
| Autoscale admin user name (FortiAnalyzerAutoscaleAdminUsername) | Requires input | Name of the secondary administrator-level account in the FortiAnalyzer, which FortiGate Autoscale uses to connect to the FortiAnalyzer to authorize any FortiGate device in the Auto Scaling group. To conform to the FortiAnalyzer naming policy, the user name can only contain numbers, lowercase letters, uppercase letters, and hyphens. It cannot start or end with a hyphen (-). |
| Autoscale admin password (FortiAnalyzerAutoscaleAdminPassword) | Requires input | Password for the "Autoscale admin user name." The password must conform to the FortiAnalyzer password policy and have a minimum length of 8 and a maximum length of 128. If you need to enable KMS encryption, refer to the documentation. |
| FortiAnalyzer private IP address (FortiAnalyzerCustomPrivateIpAddress) | Requires input | Custom private IP address to be used by the FortiAnalyzer. Must be within the public subnet 1 CIDR range. Required if "FortiAnalyzer integration" is set to <i>yes</i> . If "FortiAnalyzer integration" is set to <i>no</i> , any input will be ignored. |

Custom asset location configuration

| Parameter label (name) | Default | Description |
|--|-------------------|---|
| Use custom asset location (UseCustomAssetLocation) | no | Set to yes to use a custom S3 location for custom assets such as licenses and customized configsets. |
| Custom asset S3 bucket (CustomAssetContainer) | Requires input | Name of the S3 bucket that contains your custom assets. Required if 'Use custom asset location' is set to <i>yes</i> . Can only contain numbers, lowercase letters, uppercase letters, and hyphens (-). It cannot start or end with a hyphen (-). |
| Custom asset folder (CustomAssetDirectory) | Requires input | The sub path within the 'custom asset container' that serves as the top level directory of all your custom assets. If 'Use custom asset location' is set to <i>yes</i> , and this value is left empty, the 'custom asset container' will serve as the top level directory. Can only contain numbers, lowercase letters, uppercase letters, hyphens (-), and forward slashes (/). If provided, it must end with a forward slash (/). |

Deployment resources configuration

| Parameter label (name) | Default | Description |
|-------------------------------------|-------------------|---|
| S3 bucket name (S3BucketName) | Requires input | Name of the S3 bucket (created in step 4 of Obtaining the deployment package on page 43) that contains the FortiGate Autoscale deployment package. Can only contain numbers, lowercase letters, uppercase letters, and hyphens (-). It cannot start or end with a hyphen (-). |
| S3 resource folder (S3KeyPrefix) | Requires input | Name of the S3 folder (created in step 5 of Obtaining the deployment package on page 43) that stores the FortiGate Autoscale deployment resources. Can only contain numbers, lowercase letters, uppercase letters, hyphens (-), and forward slashes (/). If provided, it must end with a forward slash (/). |

Optional settings

Optional settings are configured on the *Configure stack options* page:

| Tags | (key-value pairs) to apply to | | can add up to 50 unique tags for eac | h stack. Learn more. |
|---------------------|--|-------------------------------|--------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Key Add tag | | Value | | Remove |
| ole, CloudFormation | uses permissions based on y | our user credentials. Learn r | | you don't choose a |
| IAM role | for CloudFormation to use for Sample-role-name | r all operations performed o | in the stack. | Remove |

- 1. Specify Tags and Permissions as desired:
 - a. Tags: Key-Value pairs for resources in your stack.
 - b. Permissions: An IAM role that AWS CloudFormation uses to create, modify, or delete resources in your stack.
- 2. Under *Advanced options*, it is recommended that you disable the Stack creation option *Rollback on failure* to allow for a better troubleshooting experience.

| ı can set add | itional options for your stack, like notification options and a stack policy. Learn more 🗹 |
|--|---|
| | |
| Stack p Defines the | POLICY e resources that you want to protect from unintentional updates during a stack update. |
| | · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · |
| | |
| | k configuration |
| | rms for CloudFormation to monitor when creating and updating the stack. If the operation breaches an alarm CloudFormation rolls it back. Learn more |
| | |
| | ation options |
| | ation options reation options |
| ▼ Stack c | reation options |
| ▼ Stack c Rollback on • Specifies whet | reation options |
| ▼ Stack c Rollback on Specifies whet ○ Enabled | reation options |
| ▼ Stack c Rollback on • Specifies whet | reation options |
| Stack on Specifies whet Enabled Disabled Timeout | reation options |
| Stack on Specifies whet Enabled Disabled Timeout | reation options failure her the stack should be rolled back if stack creation fails. |
| Stack on Specifies whet Enabled Disabled Timeout | reation options failure her the stack should be rolled back if stack creation fails. |

- 3. Other advanced options can be specified as desired.
- 4. When done, click Next.

Completing the deployment

On the *Review* page, review and confirm the template, the stack details, and the stack options. Under *Capabilities*, select both checkboxes to acknowledge that the template creates IAM resources and may require the ability to automatically expand macros.

| i) T | he following resource(s) require capabilities: [AWS::CloudFormation::Stack] |
|------|--|
| ea | his template contains Identity and Access Management (IAM) resources. Check that you want to create ach of these resources and that they have the minimum required permissions. In addition, they have ustom names. Check that the custom names are unique within your AWS account. Learn more |
| | or this template, AWS CloudFormation might require an unrecognized capability: APABILITY_AUTO_EXPAND. Check the capabilities of these resources. |
| | with custom names. |
| | I acknowledge that AWS CloudFormation might require the following capability: CAPABILITY_AUTO_EXPAND |

Click *Create stack* to deploy the stack.

The *Status* column shows creation status. To see the latest status, refresh the view. Creating the stacks takes about ten minutes. Deployment has completed when each stack, including the main stack and all nested stacks, has a status of *CREATE_COMPLETE*.

| CloudFormation > Stacks > FortiGate-Autoscale-Cl | -1597944688632 |
|--|--|
| ⊡ Stacks (26) C | FortiGate-Autoscale-CI-1597944688632 |
| Q FortiGate-Autoscale-CI- | Delete Update Stack actions Create stack |
| Active View nested | Stack info Events Resources Outputs Parameters Template Change sets |
| NESTED FortiGate-Autoscale-CI-1597944688632-St ackMainWorkload-19V11L-StackCreateDyna moDBTable-19G8K07BFHR6Y 2020-08-20 10:33:07 UTC-0700 | Events (8) |
| NESTED FortiGate-Autoscale-CI-1597944688632-St | Timestamp Logical ID Status Status reason |
| 2020-08-20 10:32:59 UTC-0700 | |
| NESTED | 2020-08-20 FortiGate- ⊘ 10:39:43 UTC-0700 Autoscale-CI- CREATE_COMPLETE - 1597944688632 |
| FortiGate-Autoscale-CI-1597944688632-St | 2020-08-20 10:39:41 UTC-0700 StackMainWorkload OCREATE_COMPLETE |
| CREATE_COMPLETE | 2020-08-20 10:33:00 UTC-0700 StackMainWorkload CREATE_IN_PROGR Resource creation Initiated ESS Resource creation Initiated |
| 2020-08-20 10:31:29 UTC-0700 ⊘ CREATE_COMPLETE | 2020-08-20 10:32:59 UTC-0700 StackMainWorkload CREATE_IN_PROGR - ESS • |

Post-deployment activities

If you deployed into an existing VPC, locate and select *StackMainWorkload* from the left column. Note the *Physical ID* for the *Logical ID* FgtAsgSEcurityGroup. You must associate this security group with the Private VPC Endpoint of your existing VPC.

| CloudFormation > Stacks > program | | RA74G | | |
|--|----------------------------|--------------------------|------------------------------|------------|
| 🖸 Stacks (11) | Bang01-FortiGate-A | | StackMainWorklo | ad-11 |
| Q X | Stack info Events Resource | Outputs Parameters Templ | ate Change sets | |
| | Resources (21) | | | |
| Contraction of Contra | Q. Search resources | | | |
| | Logical ID | Physical ID | т Туре | |
| And the second distances when the second | FgtAsgSecurityGroup | sg-02c3ff581b93ce5e0 🖄 | AWS:EC2:SecurityGrou | P |
| CHEATE_COMPLETE | FgtinstancelamRole | | AWS:IAM:Role | |
| HESTED | FgtinstanceProfile | | AWS-IAM InstanceProf | te |
| 2021-07-09 14:51 14 UTC-0700 | SaveSettings | | AWS:CloudFormation:1 urce | CustomReso |
| NESTED | | | - | |

- 1. In the AWS console, select Services > Network & Content Delivery > VPC.
- 2. In the left navigation tree, click *Endpoints*.
- 3. Click the filter box and search for the VPC Endpoint created in Requirements when using an existing VPC on page 42.

| aws Services ▼ | |
|--|-----------------------------------|
| New VPC Experience Tell us what you think | Create Endpoint A |
| VPC Dashboard Filter by VPC: | Q search : vpce-02 Name |
| VIRTUAL PRIVATE CLOUD Your VPCs | |
| Managed Prefix Lists Endpoints Endpoint Services New | |

4. Select the endpoint and under Actions, select Manage security groups.



5. From the Security groups list, select the group that matches the Physical ID.

| aws Services 🔻 | Q. Search for services, features, marketplace products, and | d docs [Alt+S] | D 4° | 🔻 Cregon 🔻 Support 🖲 |
|---|--|----------------|--------------------------|----------------------|
| Endpoints > Manage security groups | | | | |
| Manage security grou | lps | | | |
| Associate/Disassociate the security group | s for your network interfaces. | | | |
| VPC vpc-0 | c 41 | | | |
| Security groups 59- | u IO O | | | |
| | | | | \$ |
| | $\mathbf{Q}_{\mathbf{k}}$ Filter by tags and attributes or search by keyword | | К < | 1 to 3 of 3 > > |
| | Group ID - Group Name | - VPC ID - Des | scription | |
| | sg-0 | vpc-0 Fort | iGate security group | |
| 1 | sg-0 default | vpc-0 defa | ault VPC security group | |
| | sg-0 | vpc-0 Fort | tAnalyzer security group | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| * Required | | | | Cancel Save |
| | | | | |

6. Click Save.

Locating deployed resources

To locate a newly deployed resource, it is recommended to search for it using the *ResourceTagPrefix*, also referred to as the *ResourceGroup Tag Key*. Alternatively, the *UniqueID* can be used. For items that need a shorter prefix, the *CustomIdentifier* can be used. These keys are found on the *Outputs* tab as shown below. Note that the *UniqueID* is at the end of the *ResourceTagPrefix*.

| ortiGate-Au | toscale-CI-15 | 97944702684 | |
|------------------------------|---|---|------------------|
| Delete Update | Stack actions v | Create stack v | |
| Stack info Event | s Resources | utputs Parameters Template Chang | e sets |
| Outputs (5) Q Search outputs | | | C |
| Key 🔺 | Value 🗸 | Description ∇ | Export name s |
| CustomIdentifier | qsY46W65a2 | The custom identifier specified for this stack. This is used as a resource name prefix on those resources that have a strict naming requirement. | - |
| FgtLicensingModel | Hybrid | The FortiGate licensing model in the Auto Scaling group(s) for the initial deployment of this stack. (Options: On-Demand-Only, BYOL-Only, Hybrid) | - |
| FortiOSVersion | 6.2.3 | The selected FortiOS version. | - |
| ResourceTagPrefix | fortigate-autoscale- has-a-very-long-res- tag-prefix-038d9fe0 | The value for the Tag Key 'ResourceGroup' on all resources deployed in this stack. | - |
| Uniqueld | 038d9fe0 | An automatically generated random string as a unique ID for all resources in the deployment stack and nested stacks. | - |

To look up the newly deployed VPC using the ResourceGroup Tag Key:

- 1. In the AWS console, select Services > Network & Content Delivery > VPC.
- 2. In the left navigation tree, click Your VPCs.

3. Click the filter box and under *Tags*, select *ResourceGroup*.

| New VPC Experience Tell us what you think | |
|--|--|
| VPC Dashboard New | Your VPCs (1/28) Info |
| Filter by VPC: | Q Filter VPCs |
| Q Select a VPC | C FILLER VPCS |
| ▼ | Properties |
| VIRTUAL PRIVATE | VPC ID |
| CLOUD | |
| Your VPCs New | Tags |
| Subnets | |
| Route Tables | Name |
| Internet Gateways New | ResourceGroup |
| Earace Only Internet | |
| 4. Select your ResourceTagPrefix from the | ne list of Tags. |
| Your VPCs (27) Info | C Actions Cre |
| Q ResourceGroup: | |
| ResourceGroup values | |
| ResourceGroup: fortigate-autoscale | -has-a-very-long-res-tag-prefix-038d9fe0 |

Your VPC will be displayed. The Name of VPC is of the format <ResourceTagPrefix>-fortigate-autoscale-vpc.

| Create VPC Actions * | · |
|--|---|
| Q ResourceGroup : fortigate-autoscale-has-a-very-long-res | $ \langle \langle 1 \text{ to 1 of 1} \rangle \rangle $ |
| Name VPC ID + State - | IPv4 CIDR IPv6 CIDR (N |
| fortigate-autoscale-has-a-very-long-res-tag-prefix-038d9fe0-fortigate-autoscale-vpc vpc-0055 available | 192.168.0 |

To look up the newly deployed VPC subnets using the ResourceGroup Tag Key:

- 1. In the AWS console, select *Services* > *Network* & *Content Delivery* > *VPC*.
- 2. In the left navigation tree, click VIRTUAL PRIVATE CLOUD > Subnets.
- 3. Click the filter box and select *Tag Keys > ResourceGroup*.
- 4. Select your *ResourceTagPrefix* from the list of Tag Keys.

Your VPC subnets will be displayed. The *Name* of each subnets will be of the format <*ResourceTagPrefix>-fortigate-autoscale-vpc-subnet#*<#>.

| Create subnet Actions * | 단 🕈 🛛 |
|--|-----------------------------|
| Q ResourceGroup : fortigate-autoscale-has-a-very-long-res | 1 to 2 of 2 \rightarrow > |
| Name | - Subnet ID |
| fortigate-autoscale-has-a-very-long-res-tag-prefix-038d9fe0-fortigate-autoscale-vpc-public-sub | onet#2 subnet-04fd |
| fortigate-autoscale-has-a-very-long-res-tag-prefix-038d9fe0-fortigate-autoscale-vpc-public-sub | onet#1 subnet-0b8ł |
| | |
| 4 | • |

To look up the newly deployed DynamoDB tables using the UniqueID

- 1. In the AWS console, select Services > Database > DynamoDB.
- 2. In the left navigation tree, click Tables.
- 3. Click the filter box and enter the UniqueID.

The DynamoDB tables will be displayed. The *Name* of each DynamoDB table will be of the format <*ResourceTagPrefix>-<table-name>*.

| Cre | Delete table | | ତ |
|------------|---|----------|---------------------------|
| Q | Choose a table group | Action | ns v 🛈 |
| | | 1 | to 8 of 8 Tables Ҝ 💰 📏 🔌 |
| | Name ~ | Status 🔺 | Partition key - |
| \bigcirc | fortigate-autoscale-has-a-very-long-res-tag-prefix-038d9fe0-Autoscale | Active | vmld (String) |
| | fortigate-autoscale-has-a-very-long-res-tag-prefix-038d9fe0-CustomLog | Active | id (String) |
| | fortigate-autoscale-has-a-very-long-res-tag-prefix-038d9fe0-LicenseStock | Active | checksum (String) |
| | fortigate-autoscale-has-a-very-long-res-tag-prefix-038d9fe0-LicenseUsage | Active | checksum (String) |
| | fortigate-autoscale-has-a-very-long-res-tag-prefix-038d9fe0-LifecycleItem | Active | vmld (String) |
| | fortigate-autoscale-has-a-very-long-res-tag-prefix-038d9fe0-PrimaryElection | Active | scalingGroupName (String) |
| | fortigate-autoscale-has-a-very-long-res-tag-prefix-038d9fe0-Settings | Active | settingKey (String) |
| | fortigate-autoscale-has-a-very-long-res-tag-prefix-038d9fe0-VpnAttachment | Active | vmld (String) |
| • | | | Þ |

To look up the newly deployed Lambda Functions using the CustomIdentifier or the UniqueID:

- 1. In the AWS console, select *Services* > *Compute* > *Lambda*.
- 2. In the left navigation tree, click Functions.
- 3. Click the filter box and enter the *CustomIdentifier* or the *UniqueID*.

The Lambda Functions will be displayed. Each *Function name* will be of the format *<CustomIdentifier>-<UniqueID>- LambdaFunctionName*.

| une | ctions (52) | | C Actions | Crea | te function |
|-----------|---|---|-----------------|----------------|--------------------|
| Q | Add filter | | | ? < | 1 > © |
| K | Keyword : qsY46w65a2 🛞 | | | | |
| | Function name ∇ | Description | Runtime 🔻 | Code size ⊽ | Last modified 🔻 |
|) | qsY46W65a2-038d9fe0-fortigate- autoscale-handler | FortiGate Autoscale handler function. | Node.js 12.x | 2.6 MB | yesterday |
| \supset | qsY46W65a2-038d9fe0-fortigate- autoscale-byol-license | FortiGate Autoscale BYOL license handler function. | Node.js 12.x | 2.6 MB | yesterday |
|) | qsY46W65a2-038d9fe0-fortigate- transit-gateway-vpn-handler | A service for Transit Gateway VPN management. | Node.js 12.x | 2.6 MB | yesterday |
| \supset | qsY46W65a2-038d9fe0-fortigate- autoscale-auto-scaling-event | FortiGate Autoscale Auto Scaling event handler. | Node.js 12.x | 2.6 MB | yesterday |
| 2 | qsY46W65a2-038d9fe0-fortigate- autoscale-cloud-formation-service | FortiGate Autoscale service provider function for Cloud Formation stack. | Node.js 12.x | 2.6 MB | yesterday |

Click the Function name to go directly to the function.

Verifying the deployment

FortiGate Autoscale for AWS creates two Auto Scaling groups with instances as specified in the CFT parameters. One of theses instances is the elected primary instance. Verify the following:

- the Auto Scaling groups
- the primary election

If deploying with Transit Gateway integration, you will also need to verify:

• the Transit Gateway

To verify the Auto Scaling groups:

- 1. In the AWS console, select the Services > Compute > EC2.
- 2. In the left navigation tree, click AUTO SCALING > Auto Scaling Groups.
- 3. Click the filter box and look up the Auto Scaling groups using the Unique ID.
- 4. The name of each group will start with the prefix you specified in *Resource tag prefix*. Confirm that the number in the *Instances* column is equal to or greater than the *Desired capacity* you specified.

| EC2 > Auto Scalin | g groups | | | | | |
|-------------------|--|--------------------|---------------------|-------------|----------------------|---|
| Auto Scaling | groups (10) | C | Edit Delete | e Create a | n Auto Scaling group | |
| Q 038d9fe0 | | X 2 ma | atches | | < 1 > 6 | 0 |
| Name | | \bigtriangledown | Launch templ 🔻 | Instances 🔻 | Desired capacity ⊽ | |
| fortigate | 038d9fe0-fortigate-byol-auto-scaling-g | oup | fortigate-autoscale | 2 | 2 | |
| fortigate | 038d9fe0-fortigate-payg-auto-scaling-g | roup | fortigate-autoscale | 0 | 0 | |
| 4 | | | | | | • |

- 5. In the left navigation tree, click *INSTANCES* > *Instances*.
- 6. Click the filter box and look up instances using the ResourceTagPrefix.
- 7. Instances will be listed with their current state.

| Instances (4) Info | C | Actions v | Launch instances 🔹 |
|---|-----------------------|-------------------|-----------------------|
| Q Filter instances | | | < 1 > 💿 |
| ResourceGroup: fortigate-autoscale-has-a-very-long-res-tag-pref | ix-038d9fe0 🗙 Clear | filters | |
| Name 🗸 | AutoscaleRole 🛛 Insta | nce ID 🔻 Instance | state v Instance type |
| fortigate-autoscale-has-a-very-long-res-tag-prefix | - i-033 | b972 ⊘Runni | ng c5.xlarge |
| fortigate-autoscale-has-a-very-long-res-tag-prefix | primary i-0c74 | 632d 🛇 Runni | ng c5.xlarge |
| • | | | • |

To verify the primary election:

The primary instance is noted in the AutoscaleRole column:

| Instances (4) Info | | C Actions | Launch insta | inces 🔻 |
|---|-----------------|---------------|------------------|---------------|
| Q Filter instances | | | < | 1 > 💿 |
| ResourceGroup: fortigate-autoscale-has-a-very-long-res-tag-pref | ix-038d9fe0 🗙 | Clear filters | | |
| □ Name マ | AutoscaleRole ⊽ | Instance ID 🔻 | Instance state v | Instance type |
| fortigate-autoscale-has-a-very-long-res-tag-prefix | - | i-033fb972 | | c5.xlarge |
| fortigate-autoscale-has-a-very-long-res-tag-prefix | primary | i-0c74632d | ⊘ Running | c5.xlarge |
| 4 | | | | • |

If the *AutoscaleRole* column is not displayed, click the *Preferences* cog and locate the *Tag columns*dropdown. Select *AutoscaleRole* and then click *Confirm*.

| Tag columns Select visible tag columns | | |
|---|--------|---------|
| Search for tags keys | | • |
| Name X AutoscaleRole X | | |
| | Cancel | Confirm |
| | | |

To verify the Transit Gateway:

- 1. In the AWS console, select the Services > Network & Content Delivery > VPC.
- 2. In the left navigation tree, click TRANSIT GATEWAYS > Transit Gateways.
- 3. Filter by the Tag Key ResourceGroup. There should be one result.



- 4. In the left navigation tree, click VIRTUAL PRIVATE NETWORK (VPN) > Customer Gateways.
- 5. Filter by the Tag Key *ResourceGroup*. There should be one customer gateway per running FortiGate-VM instance (2 at the start).

| Create Customer Gateway Actions * | ତ ବ ଡ |
|--|-----------------------------|
| Q ResourceGroup : fortigate-autoscale-has-a-very-long-res Add filter | 1 to 2 of 2 \rightarrow > |
| Name ID | ▲ State – |
| fortigate-autoscale-has-a-very-long-res-tag-prefix-038d9fe0-customer-gateway-i-05 cgw-02 | 2d available |
| fortigate-autoscale-has-a-very-long-res-tag-prefix-038d9fe0-customer-gateway-i-0d cgw-0d | l8 available |
| 4 | • |

- 6. In the left navigation tree, click VIRTUAL PRIVATE NETWORK (VPN) > Site-to-Site VPN Connections.
- 7. Filter by the Tag Key *ResourceGroup*. There should be two items, 1 per FortiGate-VM instance, each with a corresponding Transit Gateway attachment.

| Crea | te VPN Connection Download Configuration Actions * | Ð | • | ? |
|------|--|--------|--------|--------|
| Q | ResourceGroup : fortigate-autoscale-has-a-very-long-res 🕥 Add filter | 2 of 2 | > > | > |
| | Name VPN ID • State | Ŧ | Virtua | l Priv |
| | fortigate-autoscale-has-a-very-long-res-tag-prefix-038d9fe0-vpn-connection-i-0 vpn-013a availa | ble | - | |
| | fortigate-autoscale-has-a-very-long-res-tag-prefix-038d9fe0-vpn-connection-i-0 vpn-0e6b availa | ble | - | |
| | | | | |
| • | | | | • |

- 8. In the left navigation tree, click TRANSIT GATEWAYS > Transit Gateway Attachments.
- **9.** Filter by the Tag Key *ResourceGroup*. There should be one VPC, and one VPN per running FortiGate-VM instance in the Auto Scaling group. (2 at the start, one primary and one secondary). The VPN name will contain the public IP address of the VPN.

| Q | ResourceGroup : fortigate-autoscale-has-a-very-long-res 💿 Add filter | | K < 1 | to 3 of 3 \rightarrow > |
|---|---|----------------|---------|---------------------------|
| | Name - | Transit Gatewa | ▲ Tran- | Resource type 👻 |
| | fortigate-autoscale038d9fe0-tgw-attachment-vpn-i-0a9365f6e2162a289-34 | tgw-attach-02f | . tg | VPN |
| | fortigate-autoscale038d9fe0-transit-gateway-attachment-fortigate-vpc | tgw-attach-06c | . tg | VPC |
| | fortigate-autoscale038d9fe0-tgw-attachment-vpn-i-0b1d02cac801a56d2-52 | tgw-attach-0c3 | . tg | VPN |

- 10. In the left navigation tree, click TRANSIT GATEWAYS > Transit Gateway Route Tables.
- 11. Filter by the Tag Key *ResourceGroup*. There should be two items, one for inbound and one for outbound. For diagrams, refer to the Appendix on page 81.

| Q, | ResourceGroup : fortigate-autoscale-has-a-very-long-res 💿 | 2 of 2 | > > | |
|----|--|--------|---------|--------|
| | Name | - T | ransit | Gate |
| | fortigate-autoscale-has-a-very-long-res-tag-prefix-038d9fe0-transit-gateway-route-table-outbound | tg | w-rtb-0 |)9f14 |
| | fortigate-autoscale-has-a-very-long-res-tag-prefix-038d9fe0-transit-gateway-route-table-inbound | tg | w-rtb-0 |)fa7f(|

Connecting to the primary FortiGate-VM

To connect to the primary FortiGate-VM instance, you will need a login URL, a username, and a password.

- 1. Construct a login URL in this way: *https://<IPAddress>:<Port>/*, where:
 - Port refers to the Admin port specified in the section FortiGate configuration on page 52.
 - *IPAddress* refers to the *Public IPv4 address* of the FortiGate-VM and is listed on the *Details* tab for the instance. In the EC2 Management console, locate the primary instance as described in the section To verify the

| primary election: on page 68. Click | the Instance ID for the primary | instance. | | |
|--|-----------------------------------|---------------------|-----------------------|---------|
| Instances (1/1) | C | Actions v | Launch instances | • |
| Q Filter instances | | | < 1 > | ٢ |
| search: i-0b1d02cac801a56d2 🗙 | Clear filters | | | |
| ✓ Name | ▼ Instance ID | ▼ Instance | state 🔻 Instance | etype ⊽ |
| fortigate-autoscale-has-a-very-long- | res-tag-prefix-03 i-0b1d02cac801a | 56d2 🛛 🔗 Runni | ing c5.xlarg | е |
| • | | | | • |
| Instance: i-0b1d02cac801a56d2 (fortigate 0b1d02cac801a56d2) Details Security Networking | | efix-038d9fe0-forti | gate-autoscale-instar | nce-i- |
| ▼ Instance summary Info | | | | |
| Instance ID | Public IPv4 address | Private IPv4 addr | esses | |
| i-Ob1d02cac801a56d2 (fortigate- autoscale-has-a-very-long-res-tag-prefix- 038d9fe0-fortigate-autoscale-instance-i- 0b1d02cac801a56d2) | D 52.25.66.115 open address 🗹 | 192.168.0.1 | 72 | |

Make note of the InstanceID as you will need it to log in.

- 2. Open an HTTPS session in your browser and go to the login URL. Your browser will display a certificate error message. This is normal because the default FortiGate certificate is self-signed and not recognized by browsers. Proceed past this error. At a later time, you can upload a publicly signed certificate to avoid this error.
- 3. Log in with the username admin and the Instance ID of the primary FortiGate-VM instance.



As the primary FortiGate-VM propagates the password to all secondary FortiGate instances, this is the initial password for all FortiGate-VM instances.

You will need this initial password if failover occurs prior to the password being changed, as the newly elected primary FortiGate-VM will still have the initial password of the previous primary .

4. You will be prompted to change the password at the first-time login. It is recommended that you do so at this time.

| | Change Password |
|-------|--|
| A | You are required to change the default password. |
| | |
| New p | assword must include: |
| 8 | Minimum length |
| Old F | Password |
| New | Password |
| Confi | rm Password |
| | |
| | ОК |
| | |
| | Logout |



You should only change the password on the primary FortiGate-VM. The primary FortiGate-VM will propagate the password to all secondary FortiGate-VMs. Any password changed on a secondary FortiGate-VM will be overwritten.

5. You will now see the FortiGate-VM dashboard. The information displayed in the license widget of the dashboard depends on your license type.
| 🚯 Dashboard | ~ | Suctom Inform | action | | Licenses (💷 🔹) 🚯 | : |
|----------------------------|---|---------------|-----------------------|---|--------------------------------|---|
| 😳 Main | ☆ | System Inforn | nation | • | Licenses (maintained) | • |
| 🔆 Security Fabric | > | Hostname | | | FortiCare Support | |
| 🛎 FortiView | > | Serial Number | | | Firmware & General Updates | |
| 🕂 Network | > | Firmware | v6.0.3 build0200 (GA) | | ♥ IPS | |
| System | > | Mode | NAT (Flow-based) | | AntiVirus | |
| Policy & Objects | > | System Time | 2019/03/27 10:44:08 | | | |
| Security Profiles | > | Uptime | 00:00:51:52 | | Web Filtering | |
| - VPN | > | WAN IP | × 111 | | FortiClient 0/10 FortiToken 0, | 0 |
| 🛔 User & Device | > | | | | 0% | |
| 🗢 WiFi & Switch Controller | > | | | | | |
| Log & Report | > | FortiCloud | | : | Security Fabric | • |
| C Monitor | > | Status 🔺 N | ot Activated | | 🔟 🕑 🛋 🗎 🗠 🚍 (0) 🗒 | |
| | | | | | | |

Attaching a VPC to the Transit Gateway

You can attach an existing VPC to the FortiGate Autoscale with Transit Gateway environment by manually creating a Transit Gateway attachment and adding the necessary routes, propagations, and associations:

- 1. Create a Transit Gateway attachment.
- 2. Create a route to the Transit Gateway.
- 3. Create a propagation in the inbound route table.
- 4. Create an association in the outbound route table.



The CIDR block for the VPC you are attaching must differ from that of the FortiGate Autoscale VPC.

In the instructions that follow, the VPC *transit-gateway-demo-vpc01* with CIDR *10.0.0.0/16* will be attached to the FortiGate Autoscale with Transit Gateway environment.

| • | Create VPC Actions * | | | € \$ | 0 |
|---|-------------------------------|-----------------------------|----------|---------------|--------|
| | Q search : vpc01 💿 Add filter | | K < | 1 to 1 of 1 🔿 | \geq |
| | Name | ✓ VPC ID ▲ State ✓ IPv4 | 4 CIDR | IPv6 CIDR | DHC |
| | transit-gateway-demo-vpc01 | vpc-01602a4a available 10.0 | 0.0.0/16 | - | dopt |
| | 4 | | | |) - F |

To create a Transit Gateway attachment:

- 1. In the left navigation tree, click TRANSIT GATEWAYS > Transit Gateway Attachment.
- 2. Click Create Transit Gateway Attachment.
- 3. Specify information as follows:
 - a. Transit Gateway ID: Select from the dropdown menu
 - **b.** Attachment type: VPC
 - c. Attachment name tag: Enter a tag of your choice
 - d. VPC ID: Select from the dropdown menu
 - e. Subnet IDs: This option appears once the VPC ID has been selected. Check the Availability Zone checkbox (es) and choose 1 subnet per Availability Zone.

For everything else, use the default settings.

- 4. Click Create attachment.
- 5. Wait for the State to change from pending to available.

| 4 | Create Transit Gateway Attachment Actions * | | Ð | ¢ 0 |
|---|---|-------------------------------|-------------|-----|
| | Q search : vpc01 💿 Add filter | K < | 1 to 1 of 1 | > > |
| | Name | ✓ Resource type ▲ Resource ID | - State | |
| | transit-gateway-demo-transit-gateway-attachment-vpc01 | VPC vpc-0c2d8ef3e | pending | |
| | 4 | | | F |

The Name is what you specified for the Attachment name tag.

6. When the State is available, click on the Resource ID to go to the VPC.

| • | Create Transit Gateway Attachment Actions V | 단 🔶 🔶 (| ? |
|---|---|---|----|
| | Q search : vpc01 💿 Add filter | $ \langle \langle 1 \text{ to } 1 \text{ of } 1 \rangle \rangle $ | |
| | Name | ✓ Resource type ▲ Resource ID ✓ State ✓ | r |
| | transit-gateway-demo-transit-gateway-attachment-vpc01 | VPC vpc-0c2d8ef3e available | |
| | 4 | | Þ. |

To create a route to the Transit Gateway:

1. In the VPC, click on the *Route table*.



| | | | | | ► |
|----------------------|----------------------|-------------------|-------------------|------------|---|
| Route Table: rtb-037 | eaf3e7e5d0f165 | 0.0.0 | | | |
| Summary | Routes Sul | bnet Associations | Route Propagation | Tags | |
| Edit routes | | | | | |
| | View | All routes | • | | |
| Destination | Target | Sta | atus | Propagated | |
| 10.0.0/16 | local | act | ive | No | |
| 0.0.0/0 | nat-017c74b8c872dff7 | 70 act | ive | No | |

3. Click Add route and specify the Destination, for example, 10.1.0.0/16. Under Target, select Transit Gateway. Route Tables > Edit routes

| Destination | | Target | | Status | Propagate | d |
|-----------------------|---|--|-----|--------|-----------|------------|
| 10.0.0/16 | | local | | active | No | |
| 0.0.0/0 | • | nat-017c74b8c872dff70 | - | active | No | \otimes |
| 10.1.0.0/16 | • | | - | | No | \otimes |
| Add route | | Egress Only Internet Gate | way | | | |
| ^t Required | | Internet Gateway NAT Gateway Network Interface | | | Cancel | Save route |
| | | Peering Connection | | | | |
| | | Transit Gateway Virtual Private Gateway | | | | |

4. Then dropdown will change to display available Transit Gateways. Select the one created by the deployment stack and then click *Save routes*.

Route Tables > Edit routes

Edit routes

Edit routes

| Destination | | Target | | | Status | Propagate | d |
|-------------|---|--------|-----------------|--------|--------|---|-------------|
| 10.0.0/16 | | local | | | active | No | |
| 0.0.0.0/0 | • | nat-01 | 7c74b8c872dff70 | • | active | No | 8 |
| 10.1.0.0/16 | • | tgw- | | • | | | No |
| Add route | | | tgw-092e9c685c5 | 4d1172 | | ay-demo-000001-h I2db680-transit-gat | |
| Required | | | | | | Cancel | Save routes |



If you want to route all traffic to the Transit Gateway, you should add a new route for destination 0.0.0.0/0. If this route already exists, simply remove the route and add a new one for the same destination with the target set to the Transit Gateway created by the deployment stack.

To create a propagation in the inbound route table:

- **1.** In the left navigation tree, click *Transit Gateways* > *Transit Gateway Route Tables*.
- 2. Select the <*ResourceTagPrefix*>-*transit-gateway-route-table-inbound* route table.

| Create Transit Gateway Route Table | | | ť | Ĵ, | ¢ | ? |
|--|-----|-----|----------|------|-------|--------|
| Q Filter by tags and attributes or search by keyword | K | < | 1 to 3 o | f3 | > > | |
| Name | | Ŧ | Transit | Gat | eway | route |
| | | | tgw-rtb- | 0e97 | e1d5c | :2faf8 |
| transit-gateway-demo-000001-has-a-very-long-prefix-512db680-transit-gateway-route-table-inbou | ind | | tgw-rtb- | 0e2c | d1bf0 | d609d |
| transit-gateway-demo-000001-has-a-very-long-prefix-512db680-transit-gateway-route-table-outbo | und | | tgw-rtb- | 0482 | 1b397 | ed856 |
| Transit Gateway Route Table: tgw-rtb-0e2cd1bf0d609d7b9 Details Associations Propagations Routes Tags | | | | - | | |
| Create propagation Delete propagation | | | | | | |
| Q Filter by attributes or search by keyword | < < | Non | e found | | > | |
| Attachment ID Resource type Resource ID | | | | | | |

This route table does not have any propagated attachments

- 3. Click the Propagations tab and then click Create propagation.
- 4. From *Choose attachment to propagate*, select the attachment created in the section To create a Transit Gateway attachment: on page 74.

Transit Gateway Route Tables > Create propagation

Create propagation

Adding a propagation will allow routes to be propagated from an attachment to the target Transit Gateway route table. An attachment can be propagated to multiple route tables.

Transit Gateway ID tgw-09844e6562e187959

Transit Gateway route table ID tgw-rtb-0e2cd1bf0d609d7b9

| Choose attachment to propagate* | | | - C | | |
|---------------------------------|----------------------------------|---|-----------------------|----------------------|----------------------------|
| | Q Filter by attributes | | | | |
| * Required | Attachment ID | Name tag | Resource ID | Resource owner ID | Association route table |
| | tgw-attach- 0adeba36ce982a638 | transit-gateway- demo-transit- gateway- attachment-vpc01 | vpc-022728efe8f41cb7f | 254414331203 | |

- 5. Click Create propagation and then click Close.
- 6. The new propagation with *Resource type* VPC is now listed on the *Propagations* tab.

| Create Transit Gateway Route Table Actions * | | | Ð | ٥ |
|---|-----|---|-------------|-----------|
| Q Filter by tags and attributes or search by keyword | K | < | 1 to 3 of 3 | > > |
| Name | | * | Transit Ga | teway ro |
| | | | tgw-rtb-0e9 | 7e1d5c2fa |
| transit-gateway-demo-000001-has-a-very-long-prefix-512db680-transit-gateway-route-table-inbou | nd | | tgw-rtb-0e2 | cd1bf0d6 |
| transit-gateway-demo-000001-has-a-very-long-prefix-512db680-transit-gateway-route-table-outbo | und | | tgw-rtb-048 | 21b397ed |

| Transit Ga | teway Route Tab | le: tgw-rtb-0e2cd1bf | | | | | | | |
|------------|------------------------|----------------------|-------------|------|------|----------|-----------|-------------|--------|
| Details | Associations | Propagations | Routes | Tags | | | | | |
| Create | propagation | | | | | | | | |
| Q, Fil | ter by attributes or s | earch by keyword | | | | | K < 1 | to 1 of 1 > | \geq |
| | Attachment ID | Res | source type | | Reso | ource ID | | | |
| | tgw-attach-0adeba3(| 6ce982a638 VP | C | | vpc- | 022728ef | e8f41cb7f | | |

7. Click on the *Routes* tab to see that the route for your VPC has been automatically propagated.

| etails A | ssociations | Propagations | Routes | Tags | | |
|---------------|------------------|-------------------|-----------------|-----------------------------|-----------------------|------------|
| ne table belo | ow will return a | a maximum of 1000 | 0 routes. Narro | ow the filter or use export | routes to view more I | routes. |
| Create rout | Replace | e route Delete | | | | |
| 0 | attributes or se | earch by keyword | | | K < 1 to | 1.of1 >>> |
| G Filter by | aunoucs of se | сают бу ксунога | | | | |
| CIDR | | Attachment | | | Resource type | Route type |

To create an association in the outbound route table:

- 1. In the left navigation tree, click *Transit Gateways > Transit Gateway Route Tables*.
- 2. Select the <ResourceTagPrefix>-transit-gateway-route-table-outbound route table.

| Create Transit Gateway Route Table | actions * | ତ 🕈 🛛 |
|--|---|---|
| Q Filter by tags and attributes or search by key | rword | < < 1 to 3 of 3 > > |
| Name | | Transit Gateway route |
| | | tgw-rtb-0e97e1d5c2faf8 |
| transit-gateway-demo-000001-has-a-very- | long-prefix-512db680-transit-gateway-route-table-in | nbound tgw-rtb-0e2cd1bf0d609d |
| transit-gateway-demo-000001-has-a-very- | long-prefix-512db680-transit-gateway-route-table-o | outbound tgw-rtb-04821b397ed85 |
| Transit Gateway Route Table: tgw-rtb-0482 Details Associations Propagation Create association Delete association | ns Routes Tags | |
| C Filter by attributes or search by keyword | | K < 1 to 1 of 1 > > |
| Attachment ID | Resource type Resource ID | |
| tgw-attach-0d55b7a5da4e3595a | VPC vpc-0b540c0 | a075009c1c |

3. Click the Associations tab and then click Create association.

4. From *Choose attachment to associate*, select the attachment created in the section To create a Transit Gateway attachment: on page 74.

Transit Gateway Route Tables > Create association

Create association

Associating an attachment to a route table allows traffic to be sent from the attachment to the target route table. An attachment can only be associated to one route table.

Transit Gateway ID tgw-09844e6562e187959

Transit Gateway route table ID tgw-rtb-04821b397ed85652a

| Choose attachment to associate* | | | - C | | |
|---------------------------------|----------------------------------|---|-----------------------|----------------------|----------------------------|
| | Q Filter by attributes | | | | |
| * Required | Attachment ID | Name tag | Resource ID | Resource owner ID | Association route table |
| | tgw-attach- 0adeba36ce982a638 | transit-gateway- demo-transit- gateway- attachment-vpc01 | vpc-022728efe8f41cb7f | 254414331203 | |

- 5. Click Create association and then click Close.
- 6. The new association with Resource type VPC is now listed on the Associations tab.

Transit Gateway Route Table: tgw-rtb-04821b397ed85652a

| Details Associations Propagation | ons Routes Tags | |
|--|-----------------|---|
| Create association Delete associa | | |
| Q Filter by attributes or search by keywor | ď | $ \langle \langle 1 \text{ to 2 of 2} \rangle \rangle $ |
| Attachment ID | Resource type | Resource ID |
| tgw-attach-0d55b7a5da4e3595a | VPC | vpc-0b540c0a075009c1c |
| tgw-attach-0adeba36ce982a638 | VPC | vpc-022728efe8f41cb7f |

The VPC is now connected to the FortiGate Autoscale Transit Gateway. For a technical view of attaching VPCs to the FortiGate Autoscale Transit Gateway, please refer to the architectural diagram.

Troubleshooting

CREATE_FAILED error in CloudFormation stack

If you encounter a CREATE_FAILED error when you launch the Quick Start, it is recommended that you relaunch the template with *Rollback on failure* set to *Disabled*. (This setting is under *Advanced options* in the AWS CloudFormation console, *Configuring option settings* page.) With this setting, the stack's state is retained and the instance is left running, so you can troubleshoot the issue.



When you set *Rollback on failure* to *Disabled*, you continue to incur AWS charges for this stack. Please make sure to delete the stack when you finish troubleshooting.

For additional information, see Troubleshooting AWS CloudFormation on the AWS website.

The deployment will also fail if you select an instance type that is not supported in the region that was selected. Your desired instance type is available in your region if it is listed on the Instance types page for your region.

The election of the primary FortiGate-VM was not successful

If the election of the primary FortiGate-VM is not successful, reset the elected primary FortiGate-VM. If the reset does not solve the problem, please contact support.

How to reset the elected primary-VM FortiGate

To reset the elected primary FortiGate-VM, navigate to the DynamoDB table <*ResourceTagPrefix*>-*FortiGatePrimaryElection*. Click the *Items* tab and delete the only item in the table.

A new primary FortiGate-VM will be elected and a new record will be created as a result.

For details on locating the DynamoDB table <*ResourceTagPrefix*>-*FortiGatePrimaryElection*, refer to the section Locating deployed resources on page 63.

Appendix

FortiGate Autoscale for AWS features

Major components

• The BYOL Auto Scaling group. This Auto Scaling group contains 0 to many FortiGate-VMs of the BYOL licensing model and will dynamically scale-out or scale-in based on the scaling metrics specified by the parameters Scale-out threshold and Scale-in threshold. For each instance you must provide a valid license purchased from FortiCare.



For BYOL-only and hybrid licensing deployments, the Minimum group size (FgtAsgMinSizeByol) must be at least 2. These FortiGate-VMs are the main instances and are fixed and running 7x24. If it is set to 1 and the instance fails to work, the current FortiGate-VM configuration will be lost.

• The On-demand Auto Scaling group. This Auto Scaling group contains 0 to many FortiGate-VMs of the On-demand licensing model and will dynamically scale-out or scale-in based on the scaling metrics specified by the parameters *Scale-out threshold* and *Scale-in threshold*.



For On-demand-only deployments, the Minimum group size (FgtAsgMinSizePayg) must be at least 2. These FortiGate-VMs are the main instances and are fixed and running 7x24. If it is set to 1 and the instance fails to work, the current FortiGate-VM configuration will be lost.

- The "assets" folder in the S3 Bucket.
 - The configset folder contains files that are loaded as the initial configuration for a new FortiGate-VM instance.
 - baseconfig is the base configuration. This file can be modified as needed to meet your network requirements. Placeholders such as {SYNC_INTERFACE} are explained in the Configset placeholders on page 82 table below
 - httproutingpolicy and httpsroutingpolicy are provided as part of the base configset for a common use case - and specify the FortiGate firewall policy for VIPs for http routing and https routing respectively. This common use case includes a VIP on port 80 and a VIP on port 443 with a policy that points to an internal load balancer. The port numbers are configurable and can be changed during CFT deployment. Additional VIPs can be added here as needed.



In FortiOS 6.2.3, any VIPs created on the primary instance will not sync to the secondary instances. Any VIP you wish to add must be added as part of the base configuration.

If you set the *Internal ELB options* parameter to do not need one, then you must include your VIP configuration in the base configuration.

- The ... >license-files > fortigate folder contains BYOL license files.
- *Tables in DynamoDB*. These tables are required to store information such as health check monitoring, primary election, state transitions, etc. These records should not be modified unless required for troubleshooting purposes.
- *Networking Components* These are the network load balancers, the target group, and the VPC and subnets. You are expected to create your own client and server instances that you want protected by the FortiGate-VM.

Configset placeholders

When the FortiGate-VM requests the configuration from the Auto Scaling Handler function, the placeholders in the table below will be replaced with actual values about the Auto Scaling group.

| Placeholder | Туре | Description |
|----------------------|------|--|
| {SYNC_ INTERFACE} | Text | The interface for FortiGate-VMs to synchronize information. Specify as port1, port2, port3, etc. All characters must be lowercase. |
| {CALLBACK_URL} | URL | The endpoint URL to interact with the auto scaling handler script. |

| Placeholder | Туре | Description |
|---------------------------|--------|---|
| | | Automatically generated during CloudFormation deployment. |
| {PSK_SECRET} | Text | The Pre-Shared Key used in FortiOS. Specified during CloudFormation deployment. |
| {ADMIN_PORT} | Number | A port number specified for admin login. A positive integer such as 443 etc. Specified during CloudFormation deployment. |
| {HEART_BEAT_ INTERVAL} | Number | The time interval (in seconds) that the FortiGate-VM waits between sending heartbeat requests to the Autoscale handler function. |

Auto Scaling Handler environment variables

| Variable name | Description |
|-------------------------|--|
| UNIQUE_ID | Reserved, empty string. |
| CUSTOM_ID | Reserved, empty string. |
| RESOURCE_TAG_ PREFIX | The value of the CFT parameter <i>Resource tag prefix</i> which is described in the section Resource tagging configuration on page 50. |

AWS GovCloud (US) support

The AWS GovCloud (US) regions us-gov-east-1 and us-gov-west-1 are supported.

AWS may have service limitations, restrictions, or different implementations for these regions. Please review AWS documentation for more information.

As service is provided differently than it is for commercial regions, if you encounter errors when deploying to these regions, please report them on the Issues tab of the FortiGate Autoscale for AWS GitHub project.

How to partially route egress traffic

By default, FortiGate Autoscale manages the route 0.0.0.0/0 in the route table associated with the FortiGate-VM cluster. As such, all egress traffic will be routed to the primary FortiGate-VM. If desired, you can add firewall policies to the FortiGate-VM with more customized egress rules.

In addition to the 0.0.0.0/0 route via FortiGate Autoscale, egress traffic can be also routed via other NAT gateways. This is done by creating a route with a specific destination with the NAT device as the target. This route must be next to the route 0.0.0.0/0 in the Autoscale route table and the route destination must be a valid CIDR. For example, for egress traffic to the IP address range 10.0.0/16 to use a different NAT device, create a route with destination 10.0.0/16 and the NAT device as the target. Egress traffic to 10.0.0/16 will now flow through the NAT device while the rest will still flow through FortiGate.

However, you cannot use the route with destination 0.0.0.0/0 because FortiGate Autoscale is managing it and will overwrite it whenever the FortiGate primary role has been switched.

Deployment templates

Deploying FortiGate Autoscale for AWS requires the use of deployment templates. There are two types of templates:

- Entry template. This template could run as the entry point of a deployment.
- Dependency template. This template is automatically run by the deployment process as a Nested Stack. It cannot be run as an entry template. A dependency template is run based on user selected options.

Following are descriptions of the templates included in the FortiGate Autoscale for AWS deployment package.

| Template | Туре | Description |
|---|------------------------|--|
| autoscale-new- vpc.template.yaml | Entry template | Deploys the Auto Scaling solution to a new VPC. |
| autoscale-existing- vpc.template.yaml | Entry template | Deploys the Auto Scaling solution to an existing VPC. |
| autoscale-tgw-new- vpc.template.yaml | Entry template | Deploys the Auto Scaling solution with Transit Gateway Integration to a new VPC. |
| autoscale- main.template.yaml | Dependency template | Does the majority of the work for deploying FortiGate Autoscale. |
| configure-fortianalyzer- service.template.yaml | Dependency template | Configure the FortiAnalyzer integration additional services. |
| copy-objects.template.yaml | Dependency template | Creates an S3 bucket in the same region where the stack is launched and copies deployment related objects to this S3 bucket. |
| create-autoscale- handler.template.yaml | Dependency template | Creates a FortiGate Autoscale Handler Lambda function and an API Gateway. |
| create-db- table.template.yaml | Dependency template | Creates all necessary DynamoDB tables for the FortiGate Autoscale solution. |
| create-fortianalyzer- components.template.yaml | Dependency template | Deploys a FortiAnalyzer to a selected subnet and configures all FortiGates to connect to it. |
| create- fortigate.template.yaml | Dependency template | Deploys a FortiGate EC2 instance to a subnet using a given FortiGate AMI, security group, and instance profile. |
| create-hybrid-auto-scaling- group.template.yaml | Dependency template | Deploys the hybrid licensing FortiGate Auto Scaling groups. |
| create-load- balancer.template.yaml | Dependency template | Deploys network traffic Load Balancers and components for FortiGate Autoscale. |
| create-new- vpc.template.yaml | Dependency template | Creates a new VPC in which to deploy the FortiGate Autoscale solution. |
| create-transit-gateway- components.template.yaml | Dependency template | Creates a Transit Gateway for FortiGate Autoscale for AWS. |
| create-tgw-vpn- handler.template.yaml | Dependency template | Creates a service for Transit Gateway VPN management. |

Cloud-init

In Auto Scaling, a FortiGate-VM uses the cloud-init feature to pre-configure the instances when they first come up. During template deployment, an internal API Gateway endpoint will be created.

A FortiGate-VM sends requests to the endpoint to retrieve necessary configuration after initialization.

Use this FortiOS CLI command to display information for your devices:

diagnose debug cloudinit show

VPN output can be retrieved with this FortiOS CLI command:

diagnose vpn tun list

Architectural diagrams

The following diagrams illustrate the different aspects of the architecture of FortiGate Autoscale for AWS.

Autoscale handler flowchart

Autoscale handler flowchart



Primary election

FortiGate Autoscale

with heartbeat response & failover management



FortiGate Autoscale VPC



FortiGate Autoscale VPC attached to a Transit Gateway





FortiGate Autoscale VPC integration with Transit Gateway

Route propagation



Route associations



Upgrading the deployment

The following provides steps to apply firmware updates to the FortiGate instances that the AWS Autoscaling deployment deployed.



Back up all FortiGate configurations prior to upgrading the FortiGate instances.

To upgrade the deployment:

- 1. Edit the autoscaling group to suspend the health check, launch, and terminate processes:
 - **a.** In the AWS management console, go to *EC2* > *Auto Scaling* > *Auto Scaling Groups*.
 - b. Edit the desired pay-as-you-go (PAYG) and/or bring your own license (BYOL) autoscaling group.
 - c. On the Details tab, go to Advanced Configurations, then click Edit.
 - d. From the Suspended Processes dropdown list, select Health Check, Launch, and Terminate.
 - e. Click Update to save the changes.



Using the *Instance Refresh* option is not recommended, as this is designed for truly ephemeral instances, which the FortiGate instances may not be.

2. Confirm the new AMI ID for PAYG or BYOL as desired for your region.



You can find the specific FortiGate AMI ID by going to the marketplace listing for FortiGate PAYG or BYOL, selecting *Subscribe*, continuing to configuration and confirming the desired region, then copying the AMI ID.

- **3.** Edit the launch template or create a new one. You will need to create a new template version that references the new FortiGate version's AMI ID, so that autoscaling uses the new version for new instances:
 - a. Go to EC2 > Instances > Launch Templates.
 - **b.** Select the desired launch template for FortiGate BYOL and PAYG.
 - c. From the Actions menu, select Modify Template (Create new version).
 - d. Under Application and OS Images, paste the AMI ID that you confirmed in step 2 in the searchbar.
 - e. Select the desired FortiGate marketplace offering.
 - f. Click *Continue*. EC2 may display a warning that your security group rules may be overridden if you proceed. Under *Network settings > Firewall (security groups)*, click *Select existing security group*, and select the

previously selected security group before saving or creating a new version of the launch template.

| Don't include in launch template | Create new subnet |
|--|----------------------------------|
| Vhen you specify a subnet, a network interface is automatically added to your template. | |
| irrewall (security groups) security group is a set of firewall rules that control the traffic for your instance. Add rules to allow astance. | v specific traffic to reach your |
| • Select existing security group | ир |
| | |
| Common security groups Info | |
| Common security groups Info Select security groups | C Compare security group rules |
| ,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,, | |
| Select security groups asg-stack-fgt-update-StackMainWorkload-12PRQIE5J48GG- X | |

- 4. Edit the BYOL or PAYG autoscaling group and update the launch template version to the new version:
 - **a.** Go to EC2 > Auto Scaling > Auto Scaling Groups.
 - **b.** Select the desired scaling group.
 - c. In LAUNCH TEMPLATE, select Edit.

d. From the Version dropdown list, select the new version.

Edit asg-stack-fgt-update-fd2163a0-fortigate-byol-autoscaling-group Info

| Launch template Info | | Switch to launch configuration |
|---|--|---|
| Launch template Choose a launch template that contains security groups. | the instance-level settings, such as the Amazon Ma | chine Image (AMI), instance type, key pair, and |
| asg-stack-fgt-update-fd2163a0- | fortigate-byol-autoscale-launch-template | ▼ C |
| Create a launch template 🗹 | | |
| Version | | |
| 2 (| 3 | |
| Latest (2) | 2 | |
| Default (2) | | |
| 2 | Launch template | Instance type |
| 1 | asg-stack-fgt-update-fd2163a0- fortigate-byol-autoscale-launch- template 🖸 lt-0feabc34b9919fb96 | c5.xlarge |
| AMI ID | Security groups | Request Spot Instances |
| ami-0c186535bfe65e6a9 | - | No |
| Key pair name | Security group IDs | |
| -keypair | - | |
| Additional details | | |
| Storage (volumes) | Date created | |
| - | Mon Mar 07 2022 08:58:50 GMT- 0800 (Pacific Standard Time) | |

- e. Click Update.
- 5. Manually apply the update to existing instances. Starting the upgrade process on the secondary autoscale FortiGates, then the primary FortiGate, is recommended. The firmware upgrade option is only available when logged in with administrator read-write privileges. Do one of the following:
 - a. In FortiOS, go to System > Firmware. Select FortiGuard Firmware, then Backup Config. Upgrade to the latest available firmware.
 - **b.** Log in to FortiOS as the admin user. Go to *System Firmware*. Under *Upload Firmware*, browse to and locate the previously downloaded firmware image file. Click *Backup config and upgrade*. The FortiGate backs up the current configuration to the management computer, uploads the firmware image file, upgrades to the new firmware version, and restarts. This process takes a few minutes.
- 6. Resume health check, launch, and terminate processes:
 - **a.** Go to EC2 > Auto Scaling Groups.
 - **b.** Edit the desired autoscaling group.

- **c.** Go to Advanced Configuration > Edit.
- d. Deselect Health Check, Launch Instances, and Terminate Instances.
- e. Click Update.

FortiGate Autoscale for AWS document history

| Template | Details |
|----------------|---|
| 3.4.0 | Updated the CFT parameters on page 50. |
| 3.3.2 (latest) | Added support for FortiOS 6.2.5, FortiOS 6.4.6, FortiOS 7.0.0, and FortiOS 7.0.1. Removed support for FortiOS 6.2.3 and FortiOS 6.4.4. Added support for FortiAnalyzer 6.4.6. Removed support for FortiAnalyzer 6.2.5 and FortiAnalyzer 6.4.4. |
| 3.3.1 | Added Requirements when using an existing VPC on page 42. |
| 3.3 | Added support for AWS GovCloud (US). VPN connections now use Diffie-Hellman Group 14 and SHA256 (Secure Hash Algorithm 2); increased stack security. |
| 3.2 | Added support for FortiOS 6.4.4. FortiAnalyzer can now be integrated into the deployment. |
| 3.0 | Supports any combination of BYOL and On-demand instances as well as the option for Transit Gateway integration. Requires FortiOS 6.2.3. |
| 2.0 | Added support for Hybrid Licensing (any combination of BYOL and/or On-demand instances) with no Transit Gateway integration. Transit Gateway support is only for On-demand instances. Documentation is no longer maintained and is only available as a PDF: Deploying auto scaling on AWS without Transit Gateway integration 2.0 Requires FortiOS 6.2.3. Deploying auto scaling on AWS with Transit Gateway integration 1.0 Requires FortiOS 6.2.1. |
| 1.0 | Supports auto scaling for On-demand instances; does not support Transit Gateway integration. Requires FortiOS 6.0.6 or FortiOS 6.2.1. Documentation is no longer maintained and is only available as a PDF: Deploying auto scaling on AWS 1.0 |

Single FortiGate-VM deployment

You can deploy the FortiGate-VM enterprise firewall for AWS as a virtual appliance in AWS (IaaS). This section shows you how to install and configure a single instance FortiGate-VM in AWS to provide a full NGFW/unified threat management security solution to protect your workloads in the AWS IaaS.



Networking is a core component in using AWS services, and using VPCs, subnets, and virtual gateways help you to secure your resources at the networking level.

This section covers the deployment of simple web servers, but you can use this type of deployment for any type of public resource protection, with only slight modifications. With this architecture as a starting point, you can implement more advanced solutions, including multitiered solutions.

In the example, two subnets are created: Subnet1, which is used to connect the FortiGate-VM to the AWS virtual gateway on the public-facing side, and Subnet2, which is used to connect the FortiGate-VM and the Windows server on the private side.

Determining your licensing model

On-demand users do not need to register from the FortiGate-VM GUI console. If you are using an on-demand licensing model, once you create the FortiGate-VM instance in AWS, contact Fortinet Customer Support with the following information:

- Your FortiGate-VM instance serial number
- Your Fortinet account email ID. If you do not have a Fortinet account, you can create one at Customer Service & Support.

If you are deploying a FortiGate-VM in the AWS marketplace with BYOL, you must obtain a license to activate it.

See Creating a support account on page 12.

Creating a VPC and subnets

This section shows you how to create an AWS VPC and create two subnets in it. For many steps, you have a choice to make that can be specific to your own environment.

To create a VPC and subnets:

- 1. Log in to the AWS Management Console.
- 2. Go to Networking & Content Delivery > VPC.
- 3. Go to Virtual Private Cloud > Your VPCs, then select Create VPC.
- 4. In the Name tag field, set the VPC name.
- 5. In the CIDR block field, specify an IPv4 address range for your VPC.
- 6. In the *Tenancy* field, select *Default*.
- 7. Select Yes, Create.

Create Subnet

8. In the *Virtual Private Cloud* menu, select *Subnets*, then select *Create Subnet*. Create a public subnet (in this example, *Subnet1*) and a private subnet (*Subnet2*), as shown in this example. Both subnets belong to the VPC that you created.

| Use the CIDR format to specify your subnet's IP address block (e.g., | 10.0.0.0/24). Note that block sizes must be between a /16 netmask |
|--|---|
| and /28 netmask. Also, note that a subnet can be the same size as y | our VPC. An IPv6 CIDR block must be a /64 CIDR block. |

| Name tag VPC | Public-ForiGate vpc-76581310 FortiGate | eVPC 🗸 🕕 | 0 | | |
|--------------------------------------|---|------------|---|---------------|--|
| VPC CIDRs | CIDR | Status | | Status Reason | |
| | 10.0.0/16 | associated | | | |
| | | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| Availability Zone | No Preference V | | | | |
| Availability Zone IPv4 CIDR block | No Preference V 0 | × | 0 | | |

×

| Create Subnet | | | | | | | | | | × |
|--|---|--------------------------|---------------------|-----------------|--|----------------|----------------------------------|-------------------------|----------|---------|
| Use the CIDR format to spe and /28 netmask. Also, not | | | | | | | | | | tmask |
| Name tag | Private-F | ortiGate | | 0 | | | | | | |
| VPC | vpc-7658 | 1310 FortiGa | ateVPC 🗸 🖸 |) | | | | | | |
| VPC CIDRs | CIDR | | State | ıs | Status F | Reason | | | | |
| | 10.0.0/ | 16 | asso | ciated | | | | | | |
| Availability Zone IPv4 CIDR block | | rence 🗸 🕄 | | 0 | | | Cance | 1 1 | ′es, Cr | reate |
| Filter by VPC: | reate Subnet | Subnet Actions | * | | | | | C | \$ | 0 |
| Q, Select a VPC | 2, -FortiGate | > | ¢ | | | | | <1 to 2 o | f 2 Subn | iets 🕬 |
| Virtual Private Cloud Your VPCs Subnets | Name Private-FortiC Public-FortiG | |)d900e6b avai | lable vpc-76581 | 310 FortiGateVP 310 FortiGateVP | C 10.0 | + CIDR - 1.1.0/24 1.0.0/24 | Available 251 251 | e IPv4,+ | IPv6 CI |
| Route Tables | | | | | | | | | | |
| Internet Gateways Egress Only Internet | | | | | | | | | | |
| | ibnet-0d900e6b | Private-FortiGate | | | | | | | | |
| DHCP Options Sets | Summary | Route Table | Network ACL | Flow Logs | Tags | | | | | |
| Elastic IPs | Summary | Constant Constant | subnet-0d900e6b P | | | lability Zone: | us-west-2a | | | - |
| Endpoints | | | FortiGate | | | | | | | |
| NAT Gateways | | IPv4 CIDR: IPv6 CIDR: | 10.0.1.0/24 | | | | rtb-145ce76d acl-7952ba00 | | | - 5 |
| Peering Connections | | IL AO CITHE | | | | | 00m 002080 | | | |

Attaching the new VPC Internet gateway

If you are using the default VPC, the Internet gateway should already exist.

To attach the new VPC Internet gateway:

- 1. In the Virtual Private Cloud menu, select Internet Gateways, then select Create Internet Gateway.
- 2. In the Name tag field, set the Internet gateway name, then select Yes, Create.
- 3. Select the Internet gateway, then select Attach to VPC.

4. Select the VPC that you created and select Yes, Attach. The Internet gateway state changes from detached to attached.

Subscribing to the FortiGate

To subscribe to the FortiGate:

- 1. Go to the AWS Marketplace's page for Fortinet FortiGate-VM (BYOL) or FortiGate-VM (on-demand). Select *Continue*.
- 2. Select Manual Launch.
- 3. Select Launch with EC2 Console beside the region you want to launch.
- 4. Select an instance type, then select Next: Configure Instance Details.
- 5. Configure instance details:
 - a. In the *Network* field, select the VPC that you created.
 - b. In the Subnet field, select the public subnet.
 - c. In the *Network interfaces* section, you will see the entry for *eth0* that was created for the public subnet. Select *Add Device* to add another network interface (in this example, *eth1*), and select the private subnet. It is recommended that you assign static IP addresses.
 - **d.** When you have two network interfaces, an EIP is not assigned automatically. You must manually assign one later. Select *Review and Launch*, then select *Launch*.
- 6. Select an existing key pair or create a new key pair. Select the acknowledgment checkbox. Select *Launch Instances*.
- 7. To easily identify the instance, set a name for it in the Name field.
- 8. Since FortiOS 6.2.2, on-demand FortiGate-VMs require connectivity to FortiCare to obtain a valid license. Without connectivity to FortiCare, the FortiGate-VM shuts down for self-protection. Ensure the following:
 - a. Outgoing connectivity to https://directregistration.fortinet.com:443 is allowed in security groups and ACLs.
 - **b.** You have assigned a public IP address (default or EIP). If you have not enabled a public address during instance creation, follow the remaining steps to assign an EIP and bring up the FortiGate-VM again.
- 9. Configure an EIP:
 - a. In the *Network & Security* menu, select *Elastic IPs*, then select one that is available for you to use or create one. Select *Actions > Associate Address*. If you do not have one available to use, create one.

| - | STORE Volumes | ^ | Alloc | ate new address | A | ctions 👻 | | | | | Ð | • | 0 |
|---|-----------------------|----|-------|-------------------------|---------|-------------------|----------|-----|---|----|--------|------|-------|
| | Snapshots | | Q | Filter by attributes of | or sear | ch by keyword | | < - | 1 | to | 4 of 4 | > | × |
| | NETWORK & SECURITY | | | Elastic IP | | Allocation ID | Instance | | | + | Privat | e IP | addre |
| | Security Groups | | | 34.210.111.61 | | eipalloc-e0e736dd | | | | | 10.2.3 | .10 | |
| L | Elastic IPs | | | 34.213.132.1 | | eipalloc-d6f120eb | | | | | 10.2.1 | .10 | |
| | Placement Groups | 11 | | 34.213.249.84 | | eipalloc-6819c855 | | | | | 10.2.1 | .67 | |
| | Key Pairs | | | 34.215.95.19 | | eipalloc-b735bd8a | - | | | | - | | |
| | Network Interfaces | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| - | LOAD BALANCING | | | | | | | | | | | | |

| • | Allocate new address | Actions A | |
|---|-----------------------------|---|--------|
| | Q Filter by attributes or s | Release addresses Associate address | |
| | Elastic IP | Disassociate address | Insta |
| | 34.210.111.61 | Move to VPC scope Restore to EC2 scope | i-02cl |
| | 34.213.132.1 | eipalloc-d6f120eb | i-033 |
| | 34.213.249.84 | eipalloc-6819c855 | i-03d |
| | 34.215.95.19 | eipalloc-b735bd8a | - |
| | | | |

- **b.** In the *Resource type* section, select *Network Interface*.
- c. In the Network interface field, select the interface ID of the network interface that you created for the public subnet (in this example, eth0). In the Private IP field, select the IP address that belongs to the public subnet. To find these values, go to the EC2 Management Console, select Instances, and select the interface in the Network interfaces section in the lower pane of the page (Interface ID and Private IP Address fields). Select Associate. A message is displayed indicating the address association was successful. Note that if the Internet Gateway isn't associated with a VPC, the elastic IP assignment will fail.

Addresses > Associate address

Associate address

Select the instance OR network interface to which you want to associate this Elastic IP address (34.215.95.19)

| | Network interface | eni-bd2aa69c | • | С | |
|------|-------------------|------------------------------|---|---|---|
| | Private IP | 10.0.0.220 | • | С | 0 |
| | | | | | |
| Warr | | Allow Elastic IP to be rease | | | |

| Lau | inch Instance | Network Interface eth0 | | | | ÷ | ۰ | 0 |
|-----|-------------------|------------------------|-------------------------------------|--------------------|------------------|----------|---------|-----|
| Q | search : i-03fcc | Interface ID | eni-bd2aa69c | | ☑ K < 1 to | o 1 of 1 | > > | 1 |
| | 1000 | VPC ID | vpc-76581310 | | 0 0 00000 | | | |
| | Name | Attachment Owner | 137016737462 | | Instance State ~ | Status | Chec | :ks |
| | Primary FortiGa | Attachment Status | attached | | running | 2/2 | check | ks |
| - | T minary T Gruesa | Attachment Time | Mon Oct 16 21:27:48 GMT-700 2017 | | • tuning | | chierch | 1 |
| | | Delete on Terminate | true | | | | | |
| | | Private IP Address | 10.0.0.220 | | | | | |
| | | Private DNS Name | | | | | | |
| - | | Elastic IP Address | | | | | | |
| | | Source/Dest. Check | true | | 51-0000000 | | | 10 |
| | | Description | Primary network interface | | | | | |
| | | Security Groups | Fortinet FortiGate-VM -BYOL v5-6-2- | | | | | |
| | | | AutogenByAWSMP-1 | | | | | |
| | | Platform - | | Network interfaces | eno | | | |
| | | | | | eth1 | | | - 8 |
| | | IAM role - | | Source/dest. check | True | | | |

Creating routing tables and associate subnets

Configure the routing tables. Since the FortiGate-VM has two interfaces, one for the public subnet and one for the private subnet, you must configure two routing tables.

 To configure the public subnet's routing table, go to Networking & Content Delivery > VPC in the AWSmanagement console. In the VPC Dashboard, select Your VPCs, and select the VPC you created. In the Summary tab in the lower pane, select the route table ID located in the Route table field. To easily identify the route table, set a name for it in the Name field.

| reate VPC | Actions v | | | | | | | 0 | 0 | 0 |
|-------------------------|--|---|--------------|-----------|----------|----------------------------|-----------------------|---------|--------|-------|
| Search VP | Cs and their prope | × | | | | | « | 1 to 3 | of 3 V | PCs>> |
| Name | | - 1 | VPC ID | - State | - | IPv4 CIDR | | IPv6 CI | DR | |
| -vpc1 | | v | /pc-2806934e | available | | 10.2.0.0/16 | | | | |
| FortiGate | /PC | v | /pc-76581310 | available | | 10.0.0/16 | | | | |
| -defa | ult | v | /pc-5bf17a3d | available | | 172.31.0.0/16 | i i | | | |
| 2-76581310 | FortiGateVPC | | | | | | | | | |
| | FortiGateVPC | Flow Lo | nas | Taos | | | | | E | |
| c-76581310 Summary | CIDR Blocks | Flow Lo vpc-7658131 FortiGateVPC | 01 | Tags | Ņ | Network ACL: | acl-79521 | ba00 | | |
| | CIDR Blocks VPC ID: State: | vpc-7658131 FortiGateVPC available | 01 | Tags | 1010 | Tenancy: | Default | ba00 | | |
| | CIDR Blocks VPC ID: State: IPv4 CIDR: | vpc-7658131 FortiGateVPC available | 01 | Tags | DN | Tenancy: IS resolution: | Default yes | ba00 | | |
| | CIDR Blocks VPC ID: State: | vpc-7658131 FortiGateVPC available 10.0.0.0/16 | 01 | | DN DN | Tenancy: | Default yes yes | ba00 | • | |

2. In the *Routes* tab, select *Edit*, then select *Add another route*. In the *Destination* field, type 0.0.0.0/0. In the *Target* field, type *igw* and select the Internet Gateway from the auto-complete suggestions. Select *Save*. The default route on the public interface in this VPC is now the Internet Gateway.

| Create Route Table | Delete Route Table | Set As Main Table | | | C | \$ | 0 |
|--------------------|--------------------|-------------------|----------------------|------------|---------|----------|---------|
| Q rtb-fb12a982 | × | | | « < 1 to 1 | of 1 Ro | oute Tal | ble > » |
| Name | | Route Table ID ~ | Explicitly Associat- | Main - | VPC | | |
| FortiGate-Pub-rou | te-table | rtb-fb12a982 | 1 Subnet | Yes | vpc-76 | 581310 | FortiGa |

| tb-fb12a982 | | | | | | |
|-------------|--------|--------------------------|---|------------|--------|--|
| Summary | Routes | Subnet Associations | Route Propa | gation | Tags | |
| Cancel Save | | : All rules | | | | |
| Destination | | Target | Status | Propagated | Remove | |
| 10.0.0.0/16 | | local | Active | No | | |
| 0.0.0/0 | | [ig] × | Active | No | 0 | |
| | te | igw-f4a78093 Forti Int | and the second se | | | |

3. In the *Subnet Associations* tab, select *Edit*, and select the public subnet to associate it with this routing table. Select *Save*.

| rtb-fb12a982 | FortiGate-Pub-route-table |
|--------------|---------------------------|
|--------------|---------------------------|

| Summa | Summary | | Subnet | Association | s |
|-----------|----------|----------------|--------------|-------------|----|
| Cancel | Save | | | | |
| Associate | Subnet | | | IPv4 CIDR | IP |
| | subnet-0 | 0960866 Publ | ic-FortiGate | 10.0.0/24 | - |

4. To configure the routing table for the private subnet, select *Create Route Table*. To easily identify the route table, set a name for it in the *Name* field. Select the VPC you created. Select Yes, *Create*.

| | - C - C - C - C - C - C - C - C - C - C | ackets are forwarded between the subnets v | within your VPC, the Interne | t, |
|--------------|---|--|------------------------------|----|
| and your VPN | I connection. | | | |
| | Name tag | Fortigate-Priv-route-table | 0 | |
| | VPC | vpc-76581310 FortiGateVPC V | | |

5. In the *Routes* tab, select *Edit*, then select *Add another route*. In the *Destination* field, type 0.0.0.0/0. In the *Target* field, enter the interface ID of the private network interface. To find the interface ID, go to the EC2 Management Console, select *Instances*, and select the interface in the *Network interfaces* section in the lower pane of the page (*Interface ID* field). Select *Save*. The default route on the private subnet in this VPC is now the private network interface of the FortiGate.

| Create Route Table | Delete Route Table | Set As Main Table | | |
|--------------------|--------------------|-------------------|----------------------|-------|
| Q fortigate- | × | | | « < 1 |
| Name | * | Route Table ID 🔹 | Explicitly Associat- | Mair |
| Fortigate-Priv-rou | te-table | rtb-2f48c956 | 0 Subnets | No |
| FortiGate-Pub-roo | ute-table | rtb-fb12a982 | 1 Subnet | Yes |

| | | eni-032da122 | | | | |
|-------------|--------|----------------------|----------------|--------------------------|--------|-----|
| Summary | Routes | eni-13c54b32 | tions | Route Propagation | 1 | Tag |
| Cancel Save | | eni-3f07881e | | | | |
| | View: | eni-54da4475 | | | | |
| Dertert | | eni-55ea6474 | | | C | |
| Destination | | eni-7b45ca5a | | | Status | |
| 10.0.0.0/16 | | eni-960e81b7 | | | Active | 1 |
| 0.0.0/0 | | eni-bd2aa69c | t, or ent | ter a valid resource ID. | | 1 |
| 0.0.0/0 | | eni-bd2aa69c eni- | t, or ent × | 7 | | |

Add another route

6. In the *Subnet Associations* tab, select *Edit*, select the private subnet to associate it with this routing table. Select *Save*. Two routing tables, one for the public segment and one for the private segment, have now been created with default routes.

| Summa | iry | Routes | Subnet | Association | s Route | Propagation | Tags | |
|-----------|------------------------------------|-------------------|--------------|-------------|-----------|--------------------------|---------------------------|--|
| Cancel | Save | | | | | | | |
| Associate | Subne | et | | IPv4 CIDR | IPv6 CIDR | Current Route | Table | |
| | subnet-00960866 Public-FortiGate | | | 10.0.0/24 | - | rtb-145ce76d FortiGate | | |
| | subnet | -0d900e6b Priva | te-FortiGate | 10.0.1.0/24 | 2 | rtb-145ce76d | FortiGate 1 routing table | |

rtb-145ce76d | FortiGate 1 routing table

7. In the EC2 Management Console, select *Instances*, and select the network interface that you created for the private subnet (in this example, *eth1*) in the *Network interfaces* section in the lower pane. Select the interface ID.

| | EC2 Dashboard | Lau | inch Instance | Connect | Actio | ns v | | | | | | - | |
|-----|-----------------------|-----|---|---------------------|-----------------------|---------|--------------------------------------|----------|--------------|-----------|-------------|----------------|---------|
| | Events | 4 | | | | | | | | | | 1 . | * |
| | Tags | Q, | Filter by tags a | and attributes o | r search b | y keyw | vord | | | 0 K | < 1 to 1 | B of 1 | 8 > |
| | Reports | | Name | | | | Instance ID . | Instan | ce Type 👻 | Availabil | lity Zone 👻 | Inst | ance S |
| | Limits | | FortiAnalyza | r On-Demand M | Aachino 3. | 1 | i-046f99710e93383f1 | t2 sma | | us-west-2 | 29 | | running |
| (1) | INSTANCES | | 1.00 0000000000000000000000000000000000 | r BYOL Machin | | | i-0820edb97be15404c | | | us-west-2 | | | running |
| Ĩ | Instances | | | Server TEST2 | | 0* | i-08f8d58c6110f946a | t2 smal | | us-west-2 | | - | running |
| 2 | Spot Requests | | For | Server TEST2 | | | 1-00100500011015408 | 12.5ma | | US-West-2 | cel | 1000 | |
| | Reserved Instances | | Netwo | ork Interface e | th1 | | | | | | a | | runninç |
| | Scheduled Instances | | jka | 100 | | -1 000 | le81b7 | | | | a | - | running |
| | Dedicated Hosts | | jka | Interfa | | | 581310 | | | | а | - | running |
| | Dedicated riosis | | Pri | Attachment C | | | 737462 | | | | a | • | runnin |
| - | IMAGES | | For | Attachment S | Status a | ttache | d | | | | a | | runnin |
| | AMIs | | Wi | Attachment | Time T | ue Od | t 17 00:00:18 GMT-700 2 | 017 | | | a | | running |
| | Bundle Tasks | (C) | ik-s | Delete on Terr | ninate tr | rue | | | | | et-00300000 | | minim |
| | ELASTIC BLOCK | | | Private IP Ad | | 0.0.1.1 | | | | | | | |
| | STORE | | | Private DNS | | p-10-0- | -1-11.us-west-2.compute. | internal | | | | | |
| | Volumes | | | Elastic IP Ad | | | | | | | | | |
| | Snapshots | | | Source/Dest. (| | alse | | | | | | | |
| | NETWORK & SECURITY | | | Desci Security G | and the second second | | t FortiGate-VM -BYOLv5 nByAWSMP-2 | 5-6-2- | | | | | |
| | Security Groups | | | | 0.2 | | | | | | | | |
| | Elastic IPs | | | IAM ro | le - | | | Sou | rce/dest. ch | eck False | | | |

8. Select the network interface, select the Actions dropdown list, select Change Source/Dest. Check. Select Disabled. Select Save.

| K < 1 to 1 o | 0 | l filter | 7 Ad | ch : eni-960e81b | Q sear |
|--------------------|-------------------------|---|---------------------|------------------|------------|
| Security groups | • Zone • | erfi * Subnet ID - VPC ID | twork inte | e - Ne | Nam |
| Fortinet FortiGate | 310 us-west-2a | Attach Detach Delete Manage IP Addresses Associate Address Disassociate Address Change Termination Behavior Change Security Groups | i-960e81b | en | C |
| | | Change Source/Dest. Check | 0e81b7 | terface: eni-96 | Network In |
| | | Add/Edit Tags Change Description | Tags | Flow Logs | Details |
| subnet-0d900e6b | Subnet ID | Create Flow Log | rface ID | Network inte | |
| us-west-2a | Availability Zone | vpc-76581310 | VPC ID | | |
| - | Description | 02:32:a2:6d:00:68 | address | MAC | |
| 137016737462 | Owner ID | Fortinet FortiGate- VM -BYOLv5-6-2- AutogenByAWSMP-2. view inbound rules | groups | Security | |
| 10.0.1.11 | Primary private IPv4 IP | in-use | Status | | |
| - | IPv4 Public IP | ip-10-0-1-11.us- west-2.compute.internal | S (IPv4) | Private DN | |
| | | Check × | Dest. | e Source/ | Change |
| | | b7 | i-960e81 | Interface en | Network |
| | | | Enabled Disabled | est. check 🔾 | Source/de |

If you have multiple network interfaces, Source/Dest. Check needs to be disabled in each interface. You can confirm by looking at the interface information shown as *false*.

| Interface ID <u>eni-765ebc72</u> VPC ID vpc-e1e4b587 Attachment Owner 123073262904 Attachment Status attached Attachment Time Wed Dec 20 11:53:39 GMT-800 2017 Delete on Terminate false | Network Interface eth3 | |
|---|--|--|
| Private IP Address 10.0.4.211 Private DNS Name ip-10-0-4-211 us-west-2 compute internal Elastic IP Address - Source/Dest. Check false Description - Security Groups Fortinet FortiGate-VM -BYOL5-4-6- AutogenByAWSMP- | VPC ID Attachment Owner Attachment Status Attachment Time Delete on Terminate Private IP Address Private DNS Name Elastic IP Address Source/Dest. Check Description | vpc-e1e4b587 123073262904 attached Wed Dec 20 11:53:39 GMT-800 2017 false 10 0.4.211 ip-10-0-4-211.us-west-2.compute.internal false - Fortinet FortiGate-VM -BYOL5-4-6- |

Connecting to the FortiGate-VM

To connect to the FortiGate-VM, you need your login credentials and its public DNS address.

The default username is admin and the default password is the instance ID.

You can find the public DNS address in the EC2 management console. Select *Instances* and look at the *Public DNS* (*IPv4*) field in the lower pane. If you do not see the DNS address, you may need to enable DNS host assignment on your VPC. In this case, go back to the VPC management console, select *Your VPCs*, and select your VPC. Select the *Action* dropdown list, and select *Edit DNS Hostnames*. Select Yes. Select Save.

| aunch Instanc | ce Connect | Actions ¥ | | | | | Ð | ۰ | 6 |
|---------------|-------------------------------|------------------------------|-----------------|---------------------|------------------------------------|---|--------------------------------------|-----|------|
| Q Name : Pri | mary FortiGate 1 😳 | Add filter | | | | 0 | < < 1 to 1 of 1 | > : | × |
| Name | | - 1 | instance ID | + Instance | Type - Avail | lability Zone 👻 | Instance State | Sta | atus |
| Primary Fo | ortiGate 1 | | | m4.large | us-we | est-2a | running | 0 | 2/2 |
| nstance: | | (Primary Forti | Gate 1) | Elastic IP: 34.215. | 95.19 | | | | |
| nstance: | Status Checks | (Primary Forti Monitoring | Gate 1) Tags | | | | | | |
| | Status Checks Instance ID | | | Elastic IP: 34.215. | | | -95-19 us- | ٦ | |
| | | | | Elastic IP: 34.215. | IS | west-2.com | -95-19.us- pute.amazonaws.c | ٦ | |
| | Instance ID | Monitoring | | Elastic IP: 34.215. | Public DNS (IPv4 | west-2.com P 34.215.95.1 | -95-19.us- pute.amazonaws.c | ٦ | |
| | Instance ID Instance state | Monitoring | Tags | Elastic IP: 34.215. | Public DNS (IPv4 IPv4 Public II | west-2.com P 34.215.95.1 Ps - S ip-10-0-0-22 | -95-19.us- pute amazonaws.c 19 | ٦ | |

2. Open an HTTPS session using the public DNS address of the FortiGate-VM in your browser (https://<public DNS>). You will see a certificate error message from your browser, which is normal because the default FortiGate certificate is self-signed and isn't recognized by browsers. Proceed past this error. At a later time, you can upload a publicly-signed certificate to avoid this error. Log in to the FortiGate-VM with your username and password (the login credentials mentioned above).

| admin | |
|----------|---|
| Password | 4 |

- **3.** If you're using a BYOL license, upload your license (.lic) file to activate the FortiGate-VM. The FortiGate-VM will automatically restart. After it restarts, log in again.
- 4. You will now see the FortiGate-VM dashboard. Depending on your license type, the information in the license widget on the dashboard may vary.

| FortiGate VM64-AWS | FGVM320 | 00010304 | ю | | Ĺ | 7- 🕜 | ÷ >_ [] | admin Q |
|---|----------------------------|------------------------|---|------------------|---|------------|---|------------|
| 🚳 Dashboard | | em Inform | | I | Licenses | | | ı |
| Security Fabric FortiView Network System Policy & Objects Security Profiles VPN | > Seria > Firm > Mod | em Time ne | FGVM320000103040 v5.6.2 build1486 (GA) NAT (Flow-based) 2017/10/16 23:03:39 00:00:03:29 | | FortiCare AntiVirus Mobile Ma FortiClient (6) | | IPS Web Filter FortiToken ORe | ing 0/0 |
| Loser & Device ♥ WiFi & Switch Controller Log & Report Monitor | > O F Alloc | al Machir GVM32 Lio | cense Is | I 2/32 | FortiCloud Status | Not Activa | ited | 1 |
| Q | Allo | ated RAM | 8 | 001 MiB | | | | |

5. Select *Network* > *Interfaces*, and edit the interfaces, if required. If the IP address or subnet mask is missing for port 1 or port 2, configure these values.
| 🚳 Dashboard | > ^ | FERTIDET | - | | | | | |
|---------------------|-----|-------------------|-------------|--------------|--------------------------|--------------------|-------------------------|-----------|
| X Security Fabric | > | FortiGate VM64-AW | 5 | 357 | | | | |
| E FortiView | > | | 2 | 4 6 | | | | |
| + Network | ~ | + Create Ne | w.▼ Ø E | dit 🔋 🖻 Dele | te | By Type By | Role Alpha | betically |
| Interfaces | 슈 | ▼ Status | T Name | T Members | T IP/Netmask | т Туре | T Access | T Ref |
| DNS | | Physical (2) | | | | | | |
| Packet Capture | | | Charlenger: | | | | PING | |
| SD-WAN | | 0 | port1 | | 10.0.0.220 255.255.255.0 | Physical Interface | HTTPS SSH FMG-Access | 0 |
| SD-WAN Status Check | | 0 | port2 | | 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0 | Physical Interface | | 0 |
| SD-WAN Rules | | | | | | | | |
| Static Routes | | | | | | | | |
| Policy Routes | 4 | | | | | | | |
| Q | | | | | | | | |

| Edit Interface |
|--|
| Interface Name port2 (06:58:3A:40:25:3B) Alias |
| Link Status Up 🕢 |
| Type Physical Interface |
| Role 1 Undefined |
| Address Addressing mode Manual DHCP One-Arm Sniffer Dedicated to FortiSwitch |
| IP/Network Mask 10.0.1.5/24 |
| Restrict Access Administrative Access Image: SNMP Image: SNMP </td |
| DHCP Server |
| Networked Devices |
| Device Detection |
| Admission Control Security Mode None Miscellaneous Scan Outgoing Connections to Botnet Sites Disable Block Monitor |
| Secondary IP Address |
| OK Cancel |

Setting up a Windows Server in the protected network

1. In the AWS management console, select EC2. Select *Launch Instance*, then select the *Microsoft Windows Server* 2012 R2 that applies to your environment. You will use this to test connectivity with remote desktop access.

| 1. Choose AMI 2. Choose Instance | e Type 3. Configu | Instance 4. Add Storage | 5. Tag Instance | 6. Configure Security Group | 7. Review | |
|----------------------------------|--------------------|--------------------------------|-----------------------|--------------------------------|-----------|-----------------|
| Step 1: Choose an A | mazon Maç | nine Image (AM | ll), | | | Cancel and Exit |
| | <i>A</i> 7 | icrosoft Windows Serv | ver 2012 R2 Base | - ami-8d0acfed | | Select |
| | | crosoft Windows 2012 R2 S | Standard edition with | 64-bit architecture. [English] | | 64-bit |
| | Free tier eligible | of device type: ebs Virtualiza | ation type: hvm | | | |

- 2. In the *Configure Instance Details* step, in the *Network* field, select the FortiGate-VM's VPC. In the *Subnet* field, select the private subnet.
- 3. In the *Configure Security Group* step, configure a security group for the Windows server so that it allows Internet access. In this example, we use Remote Desktop TCP port 3389, and other ports are optional. Select *Review and Launch*.

| 1. Choose AMI 2. Choose Instance Type 3. Configure Instance 4. Add Storage 5. Add Tags 6. Configure Security Group | 1. Choose AMI | 2. Choose Instance Type | 3. Configure Instance | 4. Add Storage | 5. Add Tags | 6. Configure Security Group |
|--|---------------|-------------------------|-----------------------|----------------|-------------|-----------------------------|
|--|---------------|-------------------------|-----------------------|----------------|-------------|-----------------------------|

Step 6: Configure Security Group

security group is a set of firewall rules that control the traffic for your instance. On this page, you can add rules to allow specific traffic to ach your instance. For example, if you want to set up a web server and allow Internet traffic to reach your instance, add rules that allow internet traffic to reach your instance, add rules that allow internet traffic to reach your instance, add rules that allow internet traffic to reach your instance, add rules that allow internet traffic to reach your instance, add rules that allow internet traffic to reach your instance, add rules that allow internet traffic to reach your instance, add rules that allow internet traffic to reach your instance. For example, if you want to set up a web server and allow internet traffic to reach your instance, add rules that allow internet traffic to reach your instance. For example, if you want to set up a web server and allow internet traffic to reach your instance, add rules that allow internet traffic to reach your instance. For example, if you want to set up a web server and allow internet traffic to reach your instance. Add rules that allow internet access to the HTTP and HTTPS ports. You can create a new security group or select from an existing one below. Learn more yout Amazon EC2 security groups.

Assign a security group: OCreate a new security group

OSelect an existing security group

| launch-wizard | Descrip I-6 created 2017-10-1 | otion: 6T23:14:20.143-07:00 | | |
|---------------|----------------------------------|--------------------------------|--------------------------|-------------|
| Type ① | Protocol (j) | Port Range (i) | Source (i) | Description |
| RDP ~ | TCP | 3389 | Custom V 0.0.0/0 | e.g. SSH f |
| HTTP ~ | TCP | 80 | Custom V 0.0.0/0, ::/0 | e.g. SSH f |
| https 🛛 📐 | TCP | 443 | Custom ~ 0.0.0.0/0, ::/0 | e.g. SSH f |
| Add Rule | | | | |
| A Wami | () | | | 1 |

4. Select a key pair, select the acknowledgment checkbox, and select Launch Instances.

Select an existing key pair or create a new key pair

A key pair consists of a **public key** that AWS stores, and a **private key file** that you store. Together, they allow you to connect to your instance securely. For Windows AMIs, the private key file is required to obtain the password used to log into your instance. For Linux AMIs, the private key file allows you to securely SSH into your instance.

Note: The selected key pair will be added to the set of keys authorized for this instance. Learn more about removing existing key pairs from a public AMI.

| ose an existing key pair | 2 |
|--------------------------|---|
| et a key pair | |
| ns-keypair | 0 |

I acknowledge that I have access to the selected private key file (fctems-keypair.pem), and that without this file, I won't be able to log into my instance.

Cancel Launch Instances

×

HA for FortiGate-VM on AWS

Deploying and configuring FortiGate-VM active-active HA

See GitHub for details on this configuration. Although GitHub only refers to 6.0, you can deploy this HA configuration for 6.4.

Deploying and configuring ELB-based HA/load balancing

FortiGate-VM can achieve HA using AWS ELB. You can deploy two FortiGate-VMs and associate them with an ELB, and traffic is balanced between the two. If one FortiGate-VM fails, the other handles traffic. This provides more security and reliability to the existing cloud infrastructure.



External and internal ELBs are required if you want to serve incoming and outgoing traffic for protected VMs. An external ELB is normally accessible from the Internet and distributes traffic as it enters a VPC. An internal ELB has similar capabilities but is only accessible within a VPC.

Like other load balancers, ELB can be configured as an external ELB that is accessible from the Internet and distributes traffic as it enters a VPC, or as an internal ELB which has similar functions and is only accessible inside a VPC. This section helps you get started with AWS ELB and FortiGate-VM configuration in an AWS environment.

Using this configuration, an IT administrator can place an application server inside a private subnet. The application server can provide web applications, terminal services, or general purpose Internet service. The access is fully protected and logged by the FortiGate-VM.

The design shows that application servers are fully separated between two subnets for active-active configuration. The load is divided evenly in this configuration.

You can protect and turn multiple AZs highly available depending on how you design the topology.

You can also combine AWS Route 53 to use DNS name together with ELB.

Creating two subnets on your Amazon VPC

- 1. Log into AWS with your EC2 credentials and select VPC.
- 2. Select Start VPC Wizard to create a new VPC.
- 3. Select VPC with a Single Public Subnet.
- 4. Fill in the information as required and select Create VPC.

| 🎁 AWS - Service | s 🛩 Edit 🛩 | | Cynthia Hsieh ¥ | N. California * | Support * |
|------------------------|-----------------------------|--------------------------------|-----------------|-----------------|-----------|
| Step 2: VPC with a Sin | gle Public Subnet | | | | |
| IP CIDR block:* | 10.0.0/16 | (65531 IP addresses available) | | | |
| VPC name: | Fortinet-VPC | | | | |
| Public subnet:* | 10.0.0.0/24 | (251 IP addresses available) | | | |
| Availability Zone:* | No Preference | | | | |
| Subnet name: | Public subnet | | | | |
| | You can add more subnets at | ter AWS creates the VPC. | | | |
| Enable DNS hostnames:* | • Yes O No | | | | |
| Hardware tenancy:* | Default . | | | _ | |
| | | c | ancel and Exit | Back C | reate VPC |
| | | | | | |

5. You have created a VPC with a single public subnet available. In this example, the subnet is referred to as Fortinet-VPC. To deploy the FortiGate-VM, you must also create a private subnet. Go to *Subnet* and select *Create Subnet*.

| | ices 🛩 Edit 🗸 | | | | | | | | | | Cynthia Hsieh * | N. Californ | ila * t | kupport * |
|--|-------------------------------|--|---|---------------|-------------|-------------------------|--|--|------|-------------|------------------|-------------|----------|-----------|
| VPC Dashboard | Create Subnet | Delete Subnet | Modif | y Auto-Assig | n Public IP | | | | | | | - | 0 | 0 |
| Filter by VPC: None | QSearch Subne | ts and their pro | × | | | | | | | | | < < 1 to 3 | of 3 Sub | nets > >> |
| Virtual Private Cloud | Name | * Subne | t ID | ~ State | - VPC | | * | CIDR | ~ As | ailable IPs | - Availability 2 | tone ~ | Route 1 | able |
| Your VPCs | | subnet | -dc0f109a | available | vpc-3 | de82!58 (172.31.0.0/16) | | 172.31.0.0/20 | 40 | 91 | us-west-1a | | rtb-0340 | 8366 |
| Subnets | | | -1a3ae57f | available | vpc-3 | de82/58 (172.31.0.0/16) | | 172.31.16.0/20 | 40 | | us-west-1b | | rtb-0340 | 8366 |
| Route Tables | Public subnet | subnet | -015a846a | available | vpc-2 | 34c8a46 (10.0.0.0/16) | Fortin | 10.0.0/24 | 25 | 1 | us-west-1b | | rtb-d3di | 1666 |
| Internet Gateways DHCP Options Sets Elastic IPs | | | | | | | 1 | | | | | | | |
| Peering Connections | subnet-1a3ae57f (1 | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Peering Connections Security | subnet-1a3ae57f (1 Summary | Route Table | Netwo | rk ACL | Tags | | | | | | | | | |
| | | Route Table Subnet ID: | subnet-1a3 | ae571 | Tags | | | e: us-west-1b | | | | | | |
| Security | | Route Table Subnet ID: CIDR: State: | subnet-1a3 172.31.16.0 available | ae571 1/20 | | N | Route table etwork ACL | a: rtb-03408366 L: acl-bf0cccda | | | | | | |
| Security Network ACLs | | Route Table Subnet ID: CIDR: | subnet-1a3 172.31.16.0 available vpc-3de82 | ae571 | | N | Route table | a: rtb-03408366 L: acl-bf0cccda t: yes | | | | | | |
| Security Network ACLs Security Groups | | Route Table Subnet ID: CIDR: State: VPC: | subnet-1a3 172.31.16.0 available vpc-3de82 | ae571 1/20 | | N | Route table etwork ACL fault subne | a: rtb-03408366 L: acl-bf0cccda t: yes | | | | | | |
| Security Network AGLs Security Groups VPN Connections | | Route Table Subnet ID: CIDR: State: VPC: | subnet-1a3 172.31.16.0 available vpc-3de82 | ae571 1/20 | | N | Route table etwork ACL fault subne | a: rtb-03408366 L: acl-bf0cccda t: yes | | | | | | |

6. Fill in the information as required and select Yes, Create. In this example, the subnet will be referred to as "Application Subnet 1".



Creating a security group for the FortiGate-VM

- 1. Go to Security Groups and select Create Security Group. Set it to Fortinet-VPC. Select Yes, Create. In this example, this security group is referred to as Allow everything.
- 2. Edit the Allow everything group. Select the Inbound Rules tab and then select Edit.
- 3. Set Type to ALL TCP, Protocol to TCP (6), Port Range to ALL, and Source to 0.0.0.0/0.
- 4. Select Save.

Allocating EIPs for the FortiGate-VM and for public access

- 1. Go to *Elastic IPs* and select *Allocate New Address*.
- 2. Select Yes, Allocate to allocate an IP address.
- 3. Repeat to add two more address.

Deploying the FortiGate-VM

In this example, the FortiGate-VM instance is referred to as FortiGate 1.

- 1. Go to Services > EC2 and select Key Pairs. Select Create Key Pair, fill in the key pair name, and select Create. This saves the key pair to your system. Remember where this file is, as it is used later.
- 2. Go to the EC2 Dashboard and select Launch Instance.
- 3. Select AWS Marketplace and search for Fortinet. Locate and select FortiGate-VM (BYOL).*
- 4. Configure the FortiGate-VM deployment:
 - a. Select General purpose m3.medium as the instance type and select Next: Configure instance Details.
 - b. Set Network to Fortinet-VPC and Subnet to the public subnet.
 - c. Under Network Interface, set eth0 to the public subnet and eth1 to Fortinet-VPC.
 - d. Select Next: Add Storage.
 - e. Review your storage options. This storage is used for logging. If you want more storage for logging, change the size from 10 to the desired value. Select *Next: Tag Instance*.
 - f. Enter a Name tag and select Configure Security Group.
 - **g.** Enable Select an existing security group and select the Allow everything security group. This allows the FortiGate-VM security features to be used, rather than the basic protection from Amazon.
- 5. Select *Review and Launch*. A review page will be shown with your configuration.
- 6. Review the settings and, if the configuration is correct, select Launch.

7. Select the Fortinet-AWS-Keypair that you previously created.

| 👔 AWS - Services - Edit - | | Cynthia Hsleh + | N. California 🛩 | Support * |
|---|--|--------------------|-----------------|---------------|
| Step 7: Review Instance Launch | heave 4. Act Storage 5. Tig heaves 6. Configue Security Group Hereive security group, Allow everything, is open to the world. access. We recommende there you access your security group nice to allow access from known IP addresses or | и, | | |
| You can also open additional ports in your secure AMI Details | Select an existing key pair or create a new key pair × | icurity groups | | Edit AMI |
| Foreitant-VME (MIYOL) www. Foreitant-VME (MIYOL) www. Foreitant-VME (MIYOL) WWW How Down Yest die Veterstein besone Hourdy Software Fees: 50.00 per hours. Hourdy Software Fees: 50.00 per hours. By sanching this product, you will be a By sanching this product, you will be a By sanching this product, you will be a By sanching the product of the product | Belect a key pair Fortnet-AWS-Keypair | | Edit i | nstance type |
| Instance Type ECUs vCPUs | acknowledge that I have access to the selected private key file (Fortinet- AWS-Keypair.pem), and that without this file, I won't be able to log into my instance. | Network Performant | :0 | |
| m3.medium 3 1 | | Moderate | | |
| ✓ Security Groups | Cancel Launch Instances | | Edit se | curity groups |
| Security Group ID | Name Description | | | |
| | | Can | cel Previou | Launch |

8. Review the information, then select Launch Instance to deploy the FortiGate-VM.

Assigning an IP address to the FortiGate-VM

1. Go to *Network Interface* and note the *Network Interface ID* of the private interface and the FortiGate-VM ID. In the example, these are eni-b25771d7 and eni-bd5771d8, respectively.

| Events | Create Network Interface Attach Detach Delete Actions ♥ | Cynthla Hsleh * N. Cailfornia * Support * |
|--|--|---|
| Tags Reports Limits | Q search : 66232000 Add fitter | |
| INSTANCES | Name - Network Intert - Subnet ID - VPC ID - Zone - Security group eni-b2577167 subnet-cb5a64 vpc-234c8a46 us-west-1b Allow everything | |
| Instances Spot Requests Reserved Instances | eni-bd5771d8 subnet-054846a vpo-234c8a46 us-west-1b Allow everything | g Primary network interface i-6b232093 🔮 in-use |
| MAGES AMIs Bundle Tasks | | |
| ELASTIC BLOCK STORE Volumes Snapshots | | |
| NETWORK & SECURITY Security Groups Elastic IPs | | |
| Placement Groups Load Balancers Key Pairs | Network Interface: eni-b25771d7 | 880 |
| Network Interfaces | J STATE LINE | Subnet ID subnet-cb5a84ae |

2. Go to *Elastic IPs* and select one of the IPs. Select *Associate Address*, then enter the network interface ID of the FortiGate-VM. Select *Associate*.

| 🔋 AWS - Ser | vices v Edit v Cynth | via Hsieh * N. California * Support * |
|---|---|---------------------------------------|
| EC2 Dashboard Events | Allocate New Address Release Addresses Associate Address Disassociate Address | ତ ବ ଡ |
| Tags | Q, Filter by attributes or search by keyword | |
| Reports Limits | Elastic IP + Instance - Private IP Address - Scope - Public DNS | |
| in INSTANCES Instances | Associate Address | × |
| Spot Requests Reserved Instances | Select the instance OR network interface to which you wish to associate this IP address (54.153.97.210) Instance Genth instance Or Name tag | |
| in IMAGES AMIs | Or Network Interface | |
| Bundle Tasks | Private IP Address 10.0.0.5" | |
| Volumes | Reassociation () | |
| Snapshots NETWORK & SECURITY Security Groups Elastic IPs | Warning Pool associate an Elastic IP address with your instance, your current public IP address is released. Learn more about public P address is released. Learn more about public | |
| Placement Groups | Adc | 880 |
| Load Balancers | Cancel Associate | |
| Key Pairs | Instance Private IP appress | |
| Network Interfaces | Scope vpc Network Interface owner - | |
| | Duble DNG . Allocation ID apalocation | 796 |

Creating a default route

1. Go to VPC Dashboard > Route Tables and select Create Route Table. Set VPC to the private subnet and select Yes, Create.

14

- 2. Select the new route, then select the *Routes* tab, then select *Edit*. Select *Add another route* and set *Destination* to 0.0.0.0/0 and *Target* to the network interface ID of the private interface.
- 3. Select the Subnet Associations tab, enable the private subnet, and select Save.

Configuring the FortiGate-VM

- 1. Log into the FortiGate-VM GUI using the default admin account. The default admin account has the username admin and no password. The license activation screen appears.
- 2. Select *Choose File*, select your license file, and select *OK*. The system restarts. After a few minutes, the login screen appears. Log back into the FortiGate-VM.
- 3. Using your terminal, enter the following commands to log into the server and enable disk logging: ssh -i ./Fortinet-AWS-Keypair.pem admin@ FortiGate-VM64-AWS #execute update-now FortiGate-VM64-AWS #execute formatlogdisk
- 4. Go to System > Admin > Administrators and edit the default admin account. Select Change Password and enter a new password.
- 5. Go to System > Network > Interfaces and edit an internal interface (in the example, port2). Set Addressing Mode to DHCP.
- 6. This port's IP address has changed to the IP you entered using the terminal (in the example, 10.0.1.5).

| T Name | 🕆 Туре | ▼ IP/Netmask | T Access | TAdministrative Status | T Link Status |
|--|----------|------------------------|------------------------------|-------------------------------|-------------------|
| port1 | Physical | 10.0.0.5 255.255.255.0 | PING, HTTPS, SSH, FMG-Access | 0 | O 1000Mbps/Full D |
| port2 | Physical | 10.0.1.5 255.255.255.0 | | 0 | O 1000Mbps/Full D |
| port3 | Physical | 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0 | | 0 | 0 |
| port4 | Physical | 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0 | | 0 | 0 |
| port5 | Physical | 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0 | | 0 | 0 |
| port6 | Physical | 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0 | | 0 | 0 |
| port7 | Physical | 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0 | | 0 | 0 |
| mesh.root (* SSID: fortinet.mesh.root) | WiFi | 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0 | | 0 | |

7. Go to *Firewall Objects > Virtual IPs > Virtual IPs* and create a new virtual IP that will map RDP (TCP port 3389) to a Windows server that will be deployed in the next step.

| FortiGate VM64-A | AWS | | (2) Help | Wizard | Logout | F |
|--|--|---|-------------|--------|--------|---|
| System Router Policy Firewall Objects Address Address Addresses Groups Goups Goups Goups Goups Goups Goups Goups Goups Control of the second Control of the second Co | Name Comments External Interface Type Source Address Filter External IP Address/Range Mapped IP Address/Range © Port Forwarding Protocol External Service Port Map to Port | RDP Server 1 Write a comment port1 Static NAT 0.0.0.0 + 0.0.0.0 10.0.1.30 + 10.0.1.30 TCP UDP SCTP 3389 = - 3389 = - 3389 | Help | | | F |
| └-• IP Pools ❀ 👮 Monitor | | OK Can | cel | | | |

 Go to Policy > Policy and create a new policy allowing traffic from the Internet-facing interface to the internal interface.

| System | | New Pol | сy | |
|---|---|---|----------|--|
| Router | Policy Type | Firewall VPN | | |
| Policy | Policy Subtype | Address User Identity Device | Identity | |
| Policy Policy DoS Policy Proxy Options SSL/SSH Inspection Monitor | Incoming Interface Source Address Outgoing Interface Destination Address Schedule Service Action Enable NAT Logging Options No Log | port1 port2 C RDP Server 1 C always C ALL ✓ ACCEPT | | |
| irewall Objects | Log Security Events Log all Sessions Security Profiles orr AntiVirus orr Web Filter orr Application Control orr IPS | default default default default | | |
| Security Profiles | OFF SSL/SSH Inspection | default | | |
| PN ser & Device | Traffic Shaping Disclaimer | | | |
| ViFi Controller | Comments | Write a comment | 0/1023 | |
| Log & Report | | ок | Cancel | |

9. Create a second policy allowing traffic from the internal interface to the Internet-facing interface.

| iystem | New Policy | |
|--|---------------------------------------|---|
| Policy Type | O Firewall ○VPN | |
| Policy Subtype | Address User Identity Device Identity | |
| Policy Incoming Interface | port2 | • |
| -* Policy Source Address | 🔲 all | • |
| DoS Policy Outgoing Interface | port1 | • |
| * Proxy Options Destination Address SSL/SSH Inspection | 🔲 all | • |
| Monitor | 🔕 always 🔹 | • |
| Service | C ALL | 0 |
| Action | ✓ ACCEPT ~ | • |
| C Enable NAT | | |
| O Use Destination Interface Address | Fixed Port | |
| O Use Dynamic IP Pool | Click to add | |
| Logging Options | | |
| O No Log | | |
| Log Security Events | | |
| Log all Sessions | | |

Deploying the Windows Server

1. Connect to AWS and go to *Network Interfaces*. Right-click the private network interface, select *Change Source/Dest Check*, and select *Disable*. AWS now lets packets pass through instead of filtering them.

| EC2 Dashboard Events | Create Network | Interface Attach | Detach D | Ac | ions ~ | | | | 0.0 |
|--------------------------------|-------------------|------------------|----------------|----------|--------------------------------|-------------------|---------------------------|---------------|---------------|
| Tags | Q, search 1160 | Add filter | | | | | | • K < 1 | to 2 of 2 > 2 |
| Reports Limits | Name | - Network interf | Subnet ID - | VPC ID | - Zone | - Security groups | - Description | - Instance ID | - Status |
| NSTANCES | | eni-625771d7 | subnet-cb5a84 | vpo-234o | Attach | e everything | | 1-56232093 | 🔶 inuse |
| Instances | | eni-bd5771d8 | subnet-05a846a | vpo-234o | Detach | e everything | Primary network interface | 1-51232093 | in-use |
| Spot Requests | | | | | | | | | |
| Reserved Instances | | | | | Manage Private IP Addr | - | | | |
| | | | | | Associate Address | | | | |
| MAGES | | | | _ | | | | | |
| AMIs | | | | _ | Change Termination Bell | unior . | | | |
| Bundle Tasks | | | | | Channa Revents Oreans | | | | |
| BASTIC BLOCK STOPE | | | | • | | heads | | | |
| Volumes | | | | ` | Addition lags | | | | |
| Snapshots | | | | _ | Change Description | | | | |
| preperiora | | | | | | | | | |
| NETWORK & SECURITY | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | |
| Security Groups | | | | | | | | | 885 |
| Security Groups Elastic IPs | Network Interface | c eni-b25771d7 | | | | | | | |
| Security Groups | Network Interface | n: eni-b25771d7 | | | | | | | |

2. Go to EC2 instances and select Launch Instance.



3. Select *t2.micro* for the instance type and select *Next: Configure Instance Details*.

| mazon EC | Choose an Insta Choose a linet provides a wide selection d give you the flexibility to o | ance Ty | types optimi | and to fit different | use cases | instances are virtual s | evers that can in bout instance ty | in applications. Th | ey have varying combinatio can meet your computing n | ns of CPU, m eeds. | emory, storage, and netwo | uning |
|----------|--|---------|--------------|----------------------|-----------|-------------------------|---------------------------------------|---------------------|---|-----------------------|---------------------------|--------|
| iter by: | All instance types V | | generation | | Re Column | | | | | | | |
| | Family | - | Type | - vCPUs | | Memory (Gill) | - Instance I | horage (58) ① | - EBS-Optimized Availab | in (j) - | Network Performance ① | |
| • | General purpose | | \$2.micro | | | 1 | | BS only | | | Low to Moderate | |
| | General purpose | | Ramal | | | 2 | | BS only | | | Low to Moderate | |
| | General purpose | | 2.medum | 2 | | 4 | | BS only | | | Low to Moderate | |
| | General purpose | | nð.medium | 1 | | 3.75 | 1 | x 4 (550) | | | Moderate | |
| | General purpose | | m3.large | 2 | | 7.5 | 1. | 32 (550) | | | Moderate | |
| | General purpose | | ngaix.Cm | 4 | | 15 | 21 | 40 (550) | 766 | | High | |
| | General purpose | | n0.2xiarge | | | 30 | 23 | 80 (550) | Yes | | High | |
| | Compute optimized | | o4.large | 2 | | 3.75 | | BS only | Yes | | Moderate | |
| | | | | | | | | Cancel | Tevious Review and L | with N | ext: Configure Instance D | letail |

4. Set *Network* to Fortinet-VPC, subnet to Application Subnet 1, and *Network Interfaces* to eth0. Select *Next: Add Storage*.



5. If necessary, change your storage option.



6. Select Next: Tag Instance. Enter a Name tag, then select Next: Configure Security Group.

| 1. Choose AMI 2. Choose Instance Type 3. Configure Instance 4. Add Storage | 6. Tag Instance 6. Configure Security Group 7. Review | |
|--|--|---|
| Step 5: Tag Instance A tag consists of a case-sensitive key-value pair. For example, you could define a | a tag with key = Name and value = Webserver. Learn more about tagging your Amazon EC2 resource | |
| Key (127 characters maximum) | Value (255 characters maximum) | |
| Name | Subwellt Windt | 0 |
| Create Tag (Up to 10 tags maximum) | | |

7. Enable Select an existing security group and select the Allow everything group.

| Security Group ID | Name | Description | | Actions |
|---|--|----------------------------|-------------------------|-------------|
| sg-639630d6 | Allow everything | Allow every traffic | | Copy to new |
| sg-81892fea | default | default VPC security group | | Copy to new |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| ound rules for sg-b39630d6 (Sele | toted security groups: ng-b30630d8) | | | |
| | ected security groups: sg-53063008) Protect ① | Port Range ① | Source (j) | |
| bound rules for sg-b30630d6 (Sele ge ① 11CP | | | Source (j) 0.0.0.079 | |

8. Select Review and Launch.

| sg-63963036 | | AI TOP | TCP 0 - 65535 | | 0.0.0.0 |
|-----------------|---|---|--|---|----------------------|
| nstance Details | wher of instances | . [| Select an existing key pair or create a new key pair | × | Edit instance detail |
| Turnet Bio | Network Buhret EDS-optimized Monitoring nation protection Judicen behavior IAM role Tenancy User data Assign Public IP Interfaces | vpo-234c subret-o No No Stop Nore default | A hope to ensure of a calculate layer can obtain case, and a calculate layer fails on a cancel obtain case of a calculate layer cancel case cancel cas | ey file is required y file allows you to | |
| Device I | Network Interface | | AWD-Keypair.pen), and that without this file, I won't be able to log into my instance | on | Idresses |
| eth0 7 | New network interfa | 108 | Cancel Law | nch Instances | |
| torage | | | | | Edit stora |

9. After you have reviewed the configuration, select the Fortinet-AWS-Keypair that you previously created.

| 11 AWS - Se | rvices | v Edit v | | | | | | Cynthia | isieh - | N. California * | 54 | - trop |
|-------------------------|--------|--------------------------------|--------------------------|---------------------|---------------------|------------------|-----------------|--------------|---------|-------------------|--------|--------|
| EC2 Dashboard Events | ٦, | aunch Instance Com | nect Actions ~ | | | | | | | | 0 | • • |
| Tags | | Q. Filter by tags and attribut | tes or search by keyword | | | | | | | 0 K < 110 | Z of 2 | > > |
| Reports Limits | | Name | - Instance ID - | - Instance Type - | Availability Zone - | Instance State - | Status Checks - | Alarm Status | | Public DNS | | Public |
| # INSTANCES | | Fortigate 1 | 1-56232093 | m3.medium | us-west-1b | nunning | 2/2 checks | None | ۰. 🖌 | ec2-54-153-97-210 | · | 54.15 |
| Instances | | Subnet01-Win01 | i-as373462 | Connect | at 15 | nunning | 2/2 checks | None | > | | | |
| Spot Requests | | | | | lord) | | | | | | | |
| Reserved Instances | | | | Launch More Like Th | - | | | | | | | |
| R MADES | | | | Instance State | | | | | | | | |
| AMIs | | | | Instance Settings | | | | | | | | |
| Bundle Tasks | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| R BASTIC BLOOK STORE | | | | Networking | | | | | | | | |
| Volumes | - | | | CloudWatch Monitor | (print | | | | | | | |
| Snanshots | in | nstance: I-aa373462 (Sul | bnet01-Win01) Privat | te IP: 10.0.1.30 | | | | | | | | 88 |

10. Review the information, then select *Launch Instance* to deploy the server.



11. Go to EC2 instance and select the new subnet. Select Get Windows Password.



Click on *Key Pair Path Browse* and select the key pair file created earlier. Select *Decrypt Password* to receive the administrator password for RDP connection.

12. Test the connection to your RDP server using your terminal and the following command: C:\> mstsc /v: /admin

Creating a second subnet and deploying a second FortiGate-VM

Repeat the above instructions to create a second AWS subnet and deploy a second FortiGate-VM on the subnet.

Creating an ELB between the FortiGate-VMs

- 1. Go to the EC2 Dashboard, click Load Balancers, then Create Load Balancer.
- 2. Create a load balancer for RDP traffic within Fortinet-VPC. Select Continue.



3. Set the Ping Protocol to use HTTPS. Select Continue.



4. Use the + on Public Subnet and add it into the Selected Subnets list. Select Continue.



5. Select Allow every traffic. Select Continue.



6. Select both FortiGate-VMs. Select Continue.

| 1. Define Balan | | 2. Configure Health Check | 3. Select Subnets | 4. Assign Se Groups | | | 6. Add Tags | 7. Review | | |
|--------------------|-------------|------------------------------|----------------------|------------------------|-------------------|--------|----------------|----------------------|-------------------|---|
| Add In | stance | s to Load | Balanc | er | | | | | | |
| The table t | below lists | all your running | EC2 Instan | ces. Check the | boxes in the Sele | t coli | umn to add th | nose instances to th | is load balancer. | |
| PC vpc-2 | 234c8a46 (| 10.0.0/16) Fo | artinet-VPC | | | | | | | |
| | stance | Name | × | State - | Security Groups | × | Zone | · Subnet ID | - Subnet CIDR | ÷ |
| - i-d | 03f3c08 | Subnet02-Wi | n01 | running | Allow everything | | us-west-1b | subnet-0d558b6 | 8 10.0.2.0/24 | |
| 1-9 | 5393a5d | Fortigate 2 | | running | Allow everything | | us-west-1b | subnet-0f5a846 | a 10.0.0/24 | |
| 1-5 | b232093 | Fortigate 1 | | running | Allow everything | | us-west-1b | subnet-0f5a846a | a 10.0.0/24 | |
| 🦳 i-a | a373462 | Subnet01-Wi | n01 | running | Allow everything | | us-west-1b | subnet-cb5a84a | e 10.0.1.0/24 | |
| | y Zone Di | | | | | | | | | |
| Enable | Cross-Zor | e Load Balanci | m (i) | | | | | | | |
| | | n Draining | () 30 | e seconds | | | | | | |
| C110010 | | | | | | | | | | |

7. Leave *Tags* as default and select *Continue*. A review page will appear. After you have reviewed the configuration, select *Create*.



8. Now that the ELB is created, you can use a domain name to test your connection via an RDP client.

Results

Go to the EC2 dashboard and right-click FortiGate 1. Select Instance State > Stop to stop this instance.

Connect via RDP to the Windows Server. All connections use the subnet for FortiGate 2.

You can also connect using your ELB DNS name. Connections only use the subnet for FortiGate 2.

Start FortiGate 2 and wait until the ELB status is 2/2. Connect to the server using multiple sources.

The load is balanced between the FortiGate-VM instances.

Deploying FortiGate-VM active-passive HA on AWS within one zone

This guide provides sample configuration of active-passive FortiGate-VM high availability (HA) on AWS within one zone.

FortiGate's native HA feature (without using an AWS supplementary mechanism) can be configured with two FortiGate instances: one acting as the primary node and the other as the secondary node, located in two different availability zones (AZs) within a single VPC. This is called "Unicast HA" specific to the AWS environment in comparison to an equivalent feature provided by physical FortiGate units. The FortiGates run heartbeats between dedicated ports and synchronize OS configurations. When the primary node fails, the secondary node takes over as the primary node so endpoints continue to communicate with external resources over the FortiGate.

These paired FortiGate instances act as a single logical instance and share interface IP addressing. The main benefits of this solution are:

- · Fast failover of FortiOS and AWS SDN without external automation/services
- · Automatic AWS SDN updates to EIPs and route targets
- Native FortiOS configuration sync
- · Ease of use as the cluster is treated as single logical FortiGate

The following depicts the network topology for this sample deployment:



The following depicts a failover event for this sample deployment:



The following lists the IP address assignments for this sample deployment for FortiGate A:

| Port | AWS primary address | AWS secondary address |
|-------|---------------------|-----------------------|
| port1 | 10.0.0.11 | 10.0.0.13 |
| port2 | 10.0.1.11 | 10.0.1.13 |
| port3 | 10.0.2.11 | N/A |
| port4 | 10.0.3.11 | N/A |

The following lists the IP address assignments for this sample deployment for FortiGate B:

| Port | AWS primary address |
|-------|---------------------|
| port1 | 10.0.0.12 |
| port2 | 10.0.1.12 |
| port3 | 10.0.2.12 |
| port4 | 10.0.3.12 |

To check the prerequisites:

- Ensure that two FortiGates exist in the same VPC and AZ. The two FortiGates must also have the same build of FortiOS (FGT_VM64_AWS or FGT_VM64_AWSONDEMAND) installed.
- If using FGT_VM64_AWS, ensure that both FortiGates have valid licenses.

To configure FortiGate-VM HA in AWS:

- 1. In the AWS management console, create a VPC. The VPC in this example has been created with 10.0.0/16 CIDR.
- 2. Create four subnets. In this example, the four subnets are as follows:
 - a. Public WAN: 10.0.0/24
 - **b.** Internal network: 10.0.1.0/24
 - c. Heartbeat network: 10.0.2.0/24
 - d. Management network: 10.0.3.0/24
- 3. Create a single, open security group as shown below:

Security Group: sg-0e53c6af6badd964e

| Description | Inbound Rules | Outbound Rules | Tags | |
|-------------|---------------|----------------|----------------|---------------|
| Edit rules | | | | |
| Туре () | | Protocol (j) | Port Range (j) | Destination (|
| All traffic | | All | All | 0.0.0/0 |
| Description | Inbound Rules | Outbound Rules | Tags | |
| | | | | |
| Edit rules | | | | |
| Edit rules | | Protocol (j) | Port Range (j) | Source () |

4. Create an IAM role. The IAM role is necessary for HA failover. Ensure that the IAM role can read and write EC2 information to read, detach, and reattach network interfaces and edit routing tables.

- 5. Create five elastic IP addresses. Five elastic IP addresses are needed to set up the environment, but we will be left with three IP addresses at the end:
 - a. One public WAN IP address. This will be attached to the instance NIC1's secondary IP address.
 - b. One FortiGate A management IP address
 - c. One FortiGate B management IP address
 - d. Two temporary IP addresses
- 6. Create two FortiGate instances. You can use any instance type with at least four vCPUs, since four NICs are required:
 - **a.** Configure FortiGate A:
 - i. Attach the IAM role created earlier.
 - ii. Create the instance in the VPC created earlier and in the public WAN subnet, with no ephemeral public IP address.
 - iii. Configure an internal IP address of 10.0.0.11, and a secondary IP address of 10.0.0.13.

| Netw | ork interfaces U | | | | |
|--------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------|------------|------------------------|----------|
| Device | Network Interface | Subnet | Primary IP | Secondary IP addresses | IPv6 IPs |
| eth0 | New network interface * | subnet-0c6b2106 * | 10.0.0.11 | 10.0.0.13 Add IP | Add IP |

- iv. Attach a security group.
- b. Configure FortiGate B by repeating the steps for FortiGate A above. For FortiGate B, configure an internal IP address of 10.0.0.12, and no internal IP address.
- c. Attach three NICs to each FortiGate according to the IP assignment in the appropriate subnet:
 - i. FortiGate A:
 - i. port2 (AWS primary 10.0.1.11/AWS secondary 10.0.1.13) (internal network)
 - ii. port3 (AWS primary 10.0.2.11) (Heartbeat network)
 - iii. port4 (AWS primary 10.0.3.11) (management network)
 - ii. FortiGate B:
 - i. port2 (AWS primary 10.0.1.12) (internal network)
 - ii. port3 (AWS primary 10.0.2.12) (Heartbeat network)
 - iii. port4 (AWS primary 10.0.3.12) (management network)
- 7. Attach the two temporary elastic IP addresses to the port1 primary IP addresses of FortiGate A and FortiGate B. This allows access to the FortiGates via SSH for configuration purposes. The default password for the FortiGates is their instance IDs. The following shows the temporary elastic IP address assigned to FortiGate A:

eth0: eni-016c35b5d998a3995 - port1 - 10.0.0.0/24



The following shows the temporary elastic IP address assigned to FortiGate B:

eth0: eni-0d318aeb7cdfe72fb - port1 - 10.0.0.0/24

| Private IP | Public IP |
|------------|-------------|
| 10.0.0.12 | 3.88.75.174 |

To configure FortiGate A using the CLI:

Run the following commands in the FortiOS CLI on FortiGate A:

```
config sys glo
  set hostname master
end
config system interface
  edit port1
     set mode static
    set ip 10.0.0.13 255.255.255.0
    set allowaccess https ping ssh fgfm
     set alias external
  next
  edit port2
     set mode static
     set ip 10.0.1.13 255.255.255.0
     set allowaccess https ping ssh fgfm
     set alias internal
  next
  edit port3
     set mode static
     set ip 10.0.2.11 255.255.255.0
     set allowaccess https ping ssh fgfm
     set alias hasync
  next
  edit port4
    set mode static
    set ip 10.0.3.11 255.255.255.0
    set allowaccess https ping ssh fgfm
     set alias hamgmt
  next
  end
config router static
  edit 1
    set device port1
     set gateway 10.0.0.1
  next
  end
config system dns
  set primary 8.8.8.8
end
config firewall policy
  edit 0
     set name "outgoing"
     set srcintf "port2"
     set dstintf "port1"
     set srcaddr "all"
     set dstaddr "all"
     set action accept
     set schedule "always"
     set service "ALL"
     set logtraffic disable
     set nat enable
  next
end
config system ha
  set group-name "test"
```

```
set mode a-p
set hbdev "port3" 50
set session-pickup enable
set ha-mgmt-status enable
config ha-mgmt-interfaces
edit 1
    set interface "port4"
    set gateway 10.0.3.1
    next
end
set override disable
set priority 1
set unicast-hb enable
set unicast-hb-peerip 10.0.2.12
end
```

To configure FortiGate B using the CLI:

Run the following commands in the FortiOS CLI on FortiGate B:

```
config sys glo
  set hostname slave
end
config system interface
  edit port1
     set mode static
     set ip 10.0.0.12 255.255.255.0
     set allowaccess https ping ssh fgfm
     set alias external
  next
  edit port2
    set mode static
     set ip 10.0.1.12 255.255.255.0
    set allowaccess https ping ssh fgfm
     set alias internal
  next
  edit port3
    set mode static
    set ip 10.0.2.12 255.255.255.0
    set allowaccess https ping ssh fgfm
    set alias hasync
  next
  edit port4
     set mode static
     set ip 10.0.3.12 255.255.255.0
     set allowaccess https ping ssh fgfm
     set alias hamgmt
  next
  end
config router static
  edit 1
     set device port1
     set gateway 10.0.0.1
  next
  end
config system dns
  set primary 8.8.8.8
```

```
end
config firewall policy
  edit 0
     set name "outgoing"
     set srcintf "port2"
     set dstintf "port1"
     set srcaddr "all"
     set dstaddr "all"
     set action accept
     set schedule "always"
     set service "ALL"
     set logtraffic disable
     set nat enable
  next
end
config system ha
  set group-name "test"
  set mode a-p
  set hbdev "port3" 50
  set session-pickup enable
  set ha-mgmt-status enable
  config ha-mgmt-interfaces
     edit 1
        set interface "port4"
        set gateway 10.0.3.1
     next
  end
  set override disable
  set priority 1
  set unicast-hb enable
  set unicast-hb-peerip 10.0.2.11
end
```

After completing configuration of FortiGate B, remove the two temporary IP addresses. You can connect to the FortiGates via the management ports instead.

To configure the routing tables in AWS:

You must configure three routing tables.

The following shows the public WAN routing table:

| Destination | Target | Status | Propagated |
|-------------|-----------------------|--------|------------|
| 10.0.0/16 | local | active | No |
| 0.0.0.0/0 | igw-011ffd018b1e7227e | active | No |

The following shows the internal network routing table. Ensure to point the 0.0.0.0/0 CIDR to FortiGate A's port2 NIC.

| Destination | Target | Status | Propagated | |
|-------------|-------------------------|--------|------------|---|
| 10.0.0.0/16 | local | active | No | |
| 0.0.0.0/0 | eni-0f19c02934d82c086 🗸 | active | No | 8 |

The following shows the Heartbeat and management networks' routing table:

| Destination | Target | Status | Propagated |
|-------------|-----------------------|--------|------------|
| 10.0.0/16 | local | active | No |
| 0.0.0/0 | igw-05af2c26b0e7ff1fa | active | No |

To test FortiGate-VM HA:

```
1. Run get system ha status to check that the FortiGates are in sync:
  master # get sys ha stat
  HA Health Status: OK
  Model: FortiGate-VM64-AWSONDEMAND
  Mode: HA A-P
  Group: 0
  Debug: 0
  Cluster Uptime: 0 days 0:42:46
  Cluster state change time: 2019-01-15 17:23:02
  Master selected using:
     <2019/01/15 17:23:02> FGTAWS000F19C1A0 is selected as the master because it has the
           largest value of uptime.
     <2019/01/15 17:09:47> FGTAWS000F19C1A0 is selected as the master because it's the only
          member in the cluster.
   ses pickup: enable, ses pickup delay=disable
   override: disable
   unicast hb: peerip=10.0.2.12, myip=10.0.2.11, hasync port='port3'
   Configuration Status:
     FGTAWS000F19C1A0(updated 4 seconds ago): in-sync
     FGTAWS000ECBF4EF(updated 4 seconds ago): in-sync
   System Usage stats:
     FGTAWS000F19C1A0(updated 4 seconds ago):
        sessions=2, average-cpu-user/nice/system/idle=0%/0%/0%/100%, memory=5%
     FGTAWS000ECBF4EF(updated 4 seconds ago):
        sessions=0, average-cpu-user/nice/system/idle=0%/0%/0%/100%, memory=5%
   HBDEV stats:
     FGTAWS000F19C1A0(updated 4 seconds ago):
        port3: physical/1000full, up, rx-bytes/packets/dropped/errors=3135309/12092/0/0,
             tx=9539178/17438/0/0
     FGTAWS000ECBF4EF(updated 4 seconds ago):
        port3: physical/1000full, up, rx-bytes/packets/dropped/errors=9300105/17602/0/0,
             tx=3293016/11828/0/0
  Master: master , FGTAWS000F19C1A0, HA cluster index = 0
  Slave : slave , FGTAWS000ECBF4EF, HA cluster index = 1
   number of vcluster: 1
  vcluster 1: work 10.0.2.11
  Master: FGTAWS000F19C1A0, HA operating index = 0
  Slave : FGTAWS000ECBF4EF, HA operating index = 1
2. Ensure that failover functions as configured:
   a. Turn on debug mode on FortiGate B:
      slave # di de en
      slave # di de application awsd -1
      Debug messages will be on for unlimited time.
   b. Shut down the primary FortiGate A. In the event of a successful failover, FortiGate B's CLI shows the following:
      slave # Become HA master
      send vip arp: vd root master 1 intf port1 ip 10.0.0.13
      send vip arp: vd root master 1 intf port2 ip 10.0.1.13
      awsd get instance id i-Oecbf4ef4c14ba1bb
      awsd get iam role WikiDemoHARole
      awsd get region us-east-1
      awsd doing ha failover for vdom root
      awsd moving secondary ip for port1
      awsd moving secip 10.0.0.13 from eni-016c35b5d998a3995 to eni-0d318aeb7cdfe72fb
      awsd move secondary ip successfully
```

```
awsd associate elastic ip allocation eipalloc-0e5ff7daabd5f46dc to 10.0.0.13 of eni
eni-0d318aeb7cdfe72fb
awsd associate elastic ip successfully
```

```
awsd moving secondary ip for port2
```

```
awsd moving secip 10.0.1.13 from eni-0f19c02934d82c086 to eni-004d87ffb05329b28
```

```
awsd move secondary ip successfully
```

- awsd update route table rtb-ObcOaaaea8fe56192, replace route of dst 0.0.0.0/0 to eni-004d87ffb05329b28
- awsd update route successfully
- c. Verify on AWS that the public and internal networks' secondary IP addresses moved, and that the routing table changes to point to FortiGate B's internal network ENI.
- 3. Initiate an SSH session (or another protocol with similar long keep-alive session characteristics) to an external IP address on Ubuntu or an internal VM used for testing purposes. Test failover again and check that the session continues to function without needing to reconnect, and that the session list on the primary and failed over secondary FortiGates are synced.

Deploying FortiGate-VM active-passive HA AWS between multiple zones

This guide provides sample configuration of active-passive FortiGate-VM high availability (HA) on AWS between multiple zones.

You can configure FortiGate's native HA feature (without using an AWS supplementary mechanism) with two FortiGate instances: one acting as the master/primary node and the other as the slave/secondary node, located in two different availability zones (AZs) within a single VPC. This is called "Unicast HA" specific to the AWS environment in comparison to an equivalent feature provided by physical FortiGate units. The FortiGates run heartbeats between dedicated ports and synchronize OS configurations. When the primary node fails, the secondary node takes over as the primary node so endpoints continue to communicate with external resources over the FortiGate.

This feature is important because it solves a critical issue of High Availability, which is the ability to recover in the event of a catastrophic failure. In the case that both FortiGates are located in the same Availability Zone and that AZ happens to fail, then both FortiGates would go down and HA would be useless. Thus, there is a need to support HA configuration where both FortiGates are in separate AZs.

These paired FortiGate instances act as a single logical instance and share interface IP addressing. The main benefits of this solution are:

- · Fast failover of FortiOS and AWS SDN without external automation/services
- Automatic AWS SDN updates to EIPs and route targets
- Native FortiOS configuration sync
- Ease of use as the cluster is treated as single logical FortiGate

The following depicts the network topology for this sample deployment:



The following lists the IP address assignments for this sample deployment for FortiGate A:

| Port | AWS primary address | Subnet |
|-------|---------------------|-----------------|
| port1 | 10.0.0.11 | 10.0.0/24 EIP |
| port2 | 10.0.1.11 | 10.0.1.0/24 |
| port3 | 10.0.2.11 | 10.0.2.0/24 |
| port4 | 10.0.3.11 | 10.0.3.0/24 EIP |

The following lists the IP address assignments for this sample deployment for FortiGate B:

| Port | AWS primary address | Subnet |
|-------|---------------------|------------------|
| port1 | 10.0.10.11 | 10.0.10.0/24 EIP |
| port2 | 10.0.11.11 | 10.0.11.0/24 |
| port3 | 10.0.12.11 | 10.0.12.0/24 |
| port4 | 10.0.13.11 | 10.0.13.0/24 EIP |



{

}

IPsec VPN phase 1 configuration does not synchronize between primary and secondary FortiGates across AZs. Phase 2 configuration does synchronize.

To check the prerequisites:

- Ensure that two FortiGates exist in the same VPC but different AZs. The two FortiGates must also have the same FortiOS build (FGT_VM64_AWS or FGT_VM64_AWSONDEMAND) installed.
- If using FGT_VM64_AWS, ensure that both FortiGates have valid licenses.
- · The following summarizes minimum sufficient IAM roles for this deployment:

```
"Version": "2012-10-17",
"Statement": [
{
"Action": [
"ec2:Describe*",
"ec2:AssociateAddress",
"ec2:AssignPrivateIpAddresses",
"ec2:UnassignPrivateIpAddresses",
"ec2:ReplaceRoute"
],
"Resource": "*",
"Effect": "Allow"
}
]
```

To configure FortiGate-VM HA in AWS:

- 1. In the AWS management console, create a VPC. The VPC in this example has been created with 10.0.0/16 CIDR.
- 2. Create eight subnets. In this example, the eight subnets are as follows:
 - a. Four in AZ A:
 - i. Public WAN: 10.0.0/24
 - ii. Internal network: 10.0.1.0/24
 - iii. Heartbeat network: 10.0.2.0/24
 - iv. Management network: 10.0.3.0/24
 - **b.** Four in AZ B:
 - i. Public WAN: 10.0.10.0/24
 - ii. Internal network: 10.0.11.0/24
 - iii. Heartbeat network: 10.0.12.0/24
 - iv. Management: 10.0.13.0/24
- 3. Create a single, open security group as shown below:



- 4. Create an IAM role. The IAM role is necessary for HA failover. Ensure that the IAM role can read and write EC2 information to read, detach, and reattach network interfaces and edit routing tables.
- 5. Create three elastic IP addresses:
 - a. One public WAN IP address. This will be attached to the instance NIC1's secondary IP address.
 - b. One FortiGate A management IP address
 - c. One FortiGate B management IP address
- 6. Create two FortiGate instances. You can use any instance type with at least four vCPUs, since four NICs are required:
 - **a.** Configure FortiGate A:
 - i. Attach the IAM role created earlier.
 - ii. Create the instance in the VPC created earlier and in the public WAN subnet, with no ephemeral public IP address.
 - iii. Configure an internal IP address of 10.0.0.11.

| Netw | ork interfaces ① | | | | | | |
|--------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------|------------|---------------------|--------|----------|--|
| Device | Network Interface | Subnet | Primary IP | Secondary IP addres | sses | IPv6 IPs | |
| eth0 | New network interface * | subnet-0c6b210E * | 10.0.0.11 | 10.0.0.13 | Add IP | Add IP | |

- iv. Attach a security group.
- **b.** Configure FortiGate B by repeating the steps for FortiGate A above. For FortiGate B, configure the instance in the public WAN subnet in AZ B, and configure an internal IP address of 10.0.10.11.
- c. Attach three NICs to each FortiGate according to the IP assignment in the appropriate subnet:
 - i. FortiGate A:
 - i. port2 (AWS primary 10.0.1.11) (internal network)
 - ii. port3 (AWS primary 10.0.2.11) (Heartbeat network)
 - iii. port4 (AWS primary 10.0.3.11) (management network)
 - ii. FortiGate B:
 - i. port2 (AWS primary 10.0.11.11) (internal network)
 - ii. port3 (AWS primary 10.0.12.11) (Heartbeat network)
 - iii. port4 (AWS primary 10.0.13.11) (management network)
- 7. Attach the two elastic IP addresses to the port1 primary IP addresses of FortiGate A and FortiGate B. This allows access to the FortiGates via SSH for configuration purposes. The default password for the FortiGates is their instance IDs. The following shows the elastic IP address assigned to FortiGate A:

eth0: eni-02888b42018697ca2 - Primary network interface - 10.0.0.0/24

| Private IP | Public IP | |
|------------|--------------|--|
| 10.0.0.11 | 18.233.110.8 | |
| Assign new | IP | |

The following shows the elastic IP address assigned to FortiGate B:

eth0: eni-0ab045a4d6dce664a - Primary network interface - 10.0.10.0/24



To configure FortiGate A using the CLI:

Run the following commands in the FortiOS CLI on FortiGate A:

```
config sys glo
  set hostname master
end
config system interface
  edit port1
    set mode static
    set ip 10.0.0.11 255.255.255.0
    set allowaccess https ping ssh fgfm
    set alias external
  next.
  edit port2
     set mode static
     set ip 10.0.1.11 255.255.255.0
     set allowaccess https ping ssh fgfm
     set alias internal
  next
  edit port3
     set mode static
     set ip 10.0.2.11 255.255.255.0
     set allowaccess https ping ssh fgfm
     set alias hasync
  next
  edit port4
    set mode static
     set ip 10.0.3.11 255.255.255.0
     set allowaccess https ping ssh fgfm
     set alias hamgmt
  next
end
config router static
  edit 1
    set device port1
    set gateway 10.0.0.1
  next
  edit 2
    set device port2
    set gateway 10.0.1.1
     set dst 10.0.11.0/24
  next
end
config firewall policy
  edit 0
     set name "outgoing"
     set srcintf "port2"
     set dstintf "port1"
     set srcaddr "all"
     set dstaddr "all"
     set action accept
     set schedule "always"
     set service "ALL"
     set logtraffic disable
     set nat enable
  next
end
config system ha
  set group-name "test"
  set mode a-p
```

```
set hbdev "port3" 50
set session-pickup enable
set ha-mgmt-status enable
config ha-mgmt-interfaces
edit 1
    set interface "port4"
    set gateway 10.0.3.1
    next
end
set override disable
set priority 255
set unicast-hb enable
set unicast-hb-peerip 10.0.12.11
end
```

To configure FortiGate B using the CLI:

Run the following commands in the FortiOS CLI on FortiGate B:

```
config sys glo
  set hostname slave
end
config system interface
  edit port1
    set mode static
     set ip 10.0.10.11 255.255.255.0
     set allowaccess https ping ssh fgfm
     set alias external
  next
  edit port2
    set mode static
     set ip 10.0.11.11 255.255.255.0
     set allowaccess https ping ssh fgfm
     set alias internal
  next
  edit port3
     set mode static
     set ip 10.0.12.11 255.255.255.0
    set allowaccess https ping ssh fgfm
     set alias hasync
  next
  edit port4
     set mode static
     set ip 10.0.13.11 255.255.255.0
     set allowaccess https ping ssh fgfm
     set alias hamgmt
  next
end
config router static
  edit 1
     set device port1
     set gateway 10.0.10.1
  next
  edit 2
    set device port2
     set gateway 10.0.11.1
     set dst 10.0.1.0/24
```

```
next
end
config firewall policy
  edit 0
     set name "outgoing"
     set srcintf "port2"
     set dstintf "port1"
     set srcaddr "all"
     set dstaddr "all"
     set action accept
     set schedule "always"
     set service "ALL"
     set logtraffic disable
     set nat enable
  next
end
config system ha
  set group-name "test"
  set mode a-p
  set hbdev "port3" 50
  set session-pickup enable
  set ha-mgmt-status enable
  config ha-mgmt-interfaces
     edit 1
        set interface "port4"
        set gateway 10.0.13.1
     next
  end
  set override disable
  set priority 1
  set unicast-hb enable
  set unicast-hb-peerip 10.0.2.11
end
```

After completing configuration of FortiGate B, remove the EIP to the FortiGate B public IP address. You can connect to the FortiGates via the management ports instead.

To configure the routing tables in AWS:

You must configure three routing tables.

The following shows the public WAN routing table. Ensure to point the 0.0.0.0/0 CIDR to the Internet gateway:

| Destination | Target | Status | Propagated |
|-------------|-----------------------|--------|------------|
| 10.0.0/16 | local | active | No |
| 0.0.0.0/0 | igw-05af2c26b0e7ff1fa | active | No |

The following shows the internal network routing table. Ensure to point the 0.0.0.0/0 CIDR to FortiGate A's port2 NIC.

| Destination | Target | Status | Propagated |
|-------------|-----------------------|--------|------------|
| 10.0.0/16 | local | active | No |
| 0.0.0/0 | eni-0c4c085477aaff8c5 | active | No |

The following shows the Heartbeat and management networks' routing table:

| Destination | Target | Status | Propagated |
|-------------|-----------------------|--------|------------|
| 10.0.0/16 | local | active | No |
| 0.0.0.0/0 | igw-05af2c26b0e7ff1fa | active | No |

To configure a VDOM exception:

You must configure a VDOM exception to prevent interface synchronization between the two FortiGates. FortiOS 6.4.1 and later versions support the following commands. FortiOS 6.4.0 does not support these commands.

```
config system vdom-exception
  edit 1
    set object system.interface
  next
  edit 2
    set object router.static
  next
  edit 3
    set object firewall.vip
  next
end
```

To test FortiGate-VM HA:

```
1. Run get system ha status to check that the FortiGates are in sync:
  master # get sys ha stat
  HA Health Status: OK
  Model: FortiGate-VM64-AWSONDEMAND
  Mode: HA A-P
  Group: 0
  Debug: 0
  Cluster Uptime: 3 days 1:50:18
  Cluster state change time: 2019-01-31 18:20:47
  Master selected using:
     <2019/01/31 18:20:47> FGTAWS0006AB1961 is selected as the master because it has the
           largest value of override priority.
     <2019/01/31 18:20:47> FGTAWS0006AB1961 is selected as the master because it's the only
           member in the cluster.
   ses pickup: enable, ses pickup delay=disable
   override: disable
  unicast_hb: peerip=10.0.12.11, myip=10.0.2.11, hasync port='port3'
   Configuration Status:
     FGTAWS0006AB1961 (updated 3 seconds ago): in-sync
     FGTAWS000B29804F(updated 4 seconds ago): in-sync
   System Usage stats:
     FGTAWS0006AB1961 (updated 3 seconds ago):
        sessions=18, average-cpu-user/nice/system/idle=0%/0%/0%/100%, memory=10%
     FGTAWS000B29804F(updated 4 seconds ago):
        sessions=2, average-cpu-user/nice/system/idle=0%/0%/0%/100%, memory=10%
   HBDEV stats:
     FGTAWS0006AB1961 (updated 3 seconds ago):
        port3: physical/00, up, rx-bytes/packets/dropped/errors=430368/1319/0/0,
             tx=560457/1280/0/0
     FGTAWS000B29804F(updated 4 seconds ago):
        port3: physical/00, up, rx-bytes/packets/dropped/errors=870505/2061/0/0,
             tx=731630/2171/0/0
  Master: master , FGTAWS0006AB1961, HA cluster index = 1
  Slave : slave , FGTAWS000B29804F, HA cluster index = 0
  number of vcluster: 1
  vcluster 1: work 10.0.2.11
  Master: FGTAWS0006AB1961, HA operating index = 0
  Slave : FGTAWS000B29804F, HA operating index = 1
```

2. Ensure that failover functions as configured:

```
a. Turn on debug mode on FortiGate B:
    slave # di de en
    slave # di de application awsd -1
    Debug messages will be on for unlimited time.
```

b. Shut down the primary FortiGate A. In the event of a successful failover, FortiGate B's CLI shows the following: slave # Become HA master

```
state * become in muscer
send_vip_arp: vd root master 1 intf port1 ip 10.0.10.11
send_vip_arp: vd root master 1 intf port2 ip 10.0.11.11
awsd get instance id i-0b29804fd38976af4
awsd get iam role WikiDemoHARole
awsd get region us-east-1
awsd get vpc id vpc-0ade7ea6e64befbfc
awsd doing ha failover for vdom root
awsd associate elastic ip for port1
awsd associate elastic ip allocation eipalloc-06b849dbb0f76555f to 10.0.10.11 of eni
eni-0ab045a4d6dce664a
awsd associate elastic ip successfully
awsd update route table rtb-0a7b4fec57feb1a21, replace route of dst 0.0.0.0/0 to eni-
0c4c085477aaff8c5
awsd update route successfully
```

c. Verify on AWS that the public and internal networks' secondary IP addresses moved to the new primary FortiGate, and that the routing table changes to point to the secondary FortiGate's internal network ENI.

Deploying FortiGate-VM active-passive HA AWS between multiple zones manually with Transit Gateway integration

This guide provides sample configuration of a manual build of an AWS Transit Gateway (TGW) with two virtual private cloud (VPC) spokes and a security VPC. The security VPC contains two FortiGate-VMs to inspect inbound and outbound traffic.

Before deploying FortiGate high availability (HA) for AWS with TGW integration, familiarity with the following AWS services is recommended:

- Transit Gateway
- Elastic Cloud Compute (EC2)
- VPC

If you are new to AWS, see Getting Started with AWS.

This deployment consists of the following steps:

- **1.** Creating VPCs and subnets on page 140
- 2. Creating a Transit Gateway and related resources on page 141
- 3. Creating an Internet gateway on page 146
- 4. Creating VPC route tables on page 147
- 5. Deploying FortiGate-VM from AWS marketplace on page 148
- 6. Adding network interfaces and elastic IP addresses to the FortiGate-VMs on page 149
- 7. Configuring the FortiGate-VMs on page 151
- 8. Updating the route table and adding an IAM policy on page 152
- 9. Testing FortiGate-VM HA failover on page 153



Creating VPCs and subnets

Each VPC requires private subnets:

- · Each spoke VPC must each have one private subnet.
- The security VPC hub must have ten subnets: five per availability zone (AZ). Each AZ contains a subnet for the following:
 - Management
 - FortiGate private interface
 - FortiGate public interface
 - FortiGate heartbeat interface
 - Transit Gateway (TGW) attachment

Create the spoke and security subnets in different AZs to demonstrate cross-AZ functionality. The example shows the following:

- Spoke 1 (A) has one subnet in the us-west-2a AZ.
- Spoke 2 (B) has one subnet in the us-west-2b AZ.
- The security hub has four subnets for each AZ in both the us-west-2a and us-west-2b AZs.

To create VPCs and subnets:

- 1. In the AWS console, open the VPC service.
- 2. Select Your VPCs and click the Create VPC button.
- 3. In the Name tag field, enter the desired name.
- 4. In the IPv4 CIDR block and IPv6 CIDR block fields, specify the desired CIDR for the spoke VPC.
- 5. Click Create.

6. Repeat the process to create another spoke VPC and a security VPC.

| Create VPC | Actions V | |
|-----------------|-------------------------------------|---|
| Q Filter by tag | and attributes or search by keyword | |
| Name | | ✓ VPC ID ✓ State ✓ IPv4 CIDR |
| VPC_B | | vpc-02ba18eb9afb20d76 available 10.2.0.0/16 |
| VPC_A | | vpc-0160b27ddcc2fc372 available 10.1.0.0/16 |
| Sec_VPC | 2 | vpc-0786d461404402bc4 available 10.0.0.0/16 |

7. Create subnets:

- a. In the AWS console, go to the VPC service.
- b. Select Subnets, then click the Create Subnet button.
- c. In the Name tag field, enter the desired name.
- d. In the VPC field, enter the VPC ID of the desired spoke or security VPC.
- e. From the Availability Zone dropdown list, select the desired AZ.
- f. In the *IPv4 CIDR block* field, enter the desired CIDR block. Using default /24-sized subnets is recommended.
- g. Click Create.
- h. Repeat the process until you have the ten subnets.

After completing this process, the example has configured the following subnets:

- AZ A subnets in security VPC:
 - Public: 10.0.0/24
 - Internal: 10.0.1.0/24
 - Heartbeat: 10.0.2.0/24
 - Management: 10.0.3.0/24
 - TGW-Subnet: 10.0.4.0/24
- AZ B subnets in security VPC:
 - Public: 10.0.10.0/24
 - Internal: 10.0.11.0/24
 - Heartbeat: 10.0.12.0/24
 - Management: 10.0.13.0/24
 - TGW-Subnet: 10.0.14.0/24
- AZ A subnet in spoke 1 VPC: 10.1.1.0/24
- AZ B subnet in spoke 2 VPC: 10.2.1.0/24

Creating a Transit Gateway and related resources

To create a Transit Gateway and related resources:

- 1. Create a Transit Gateway (TGW):
 - a. In the AWS console, open the VPC service.
 - b. Select Transit Gateways, then click the Create Transit Gateway button.
 - c. In the Name tag field, enter the desired name.
 - **d.** Deselect *Default route table association* and *Default route table propagation* to prevent undesired association into the security route.
 - e. Edit Transit gateway CIDR blocks to enter the same CIDR range as the TGW-Subnet that you configured in

Creating VPCs and subnets on page 140.

- f. Configure other fields as desired, then click *Create*.
- g. Wait for the TGW state to change from *Pending* to *Available* before proceeding.

- 2. Create two TGW route tables: one for the security VPC and another for the spokes:
 - a. In the AWS console, open the VPC service.
 - b. Select Transit Gateway Route Tables, then click the Create Transit Gateway Route Table button.
 - c. In the Name tag field, enter the desired name.
 - d. From the Transit Gateway ID dropdown list, select the Transit Gateway ID.
 - e. Click Create.
 - f. Repeat the process for the spoke route table.
- 3. Create three TGW attachments, one for each VPC:
 - a. In the AWS console, open the VPC service.
 - b. Select Transit Gateway Attachments, then click the Create Transit Gateway Attachment button.
 - c. From the Transit Gateway ID dropdown list, select the Transit Gateway ID.
 - d. In the Attachment type field, select VPC.
 - e. In the Attachment name tag field, enter the desired name.
 - f. In the VPC ID field, enter the security VPC ID for the first attachment. This is TGW_Sec_VPC_Attachment in the screenshot.

g. For Subnet IDs, select the TGW-Subnet of each availability zone (AZ) for the security VPC.

VPC > Transit gateway attachments > Create transit gateway attachment

Create transit gateway attachment Info

A transit gateway (TGW) is a network transit hub that interconnects attachments (VPCs and VPNs) within the same AWS account or across AWS accounts.

| Details | | | | | |
|---|--|--|--|--|--|
| Name tag - optional Creates a tag with the key set to Name and the value set to the specified string. | | | | | |
| SEC-VPC-TGW-SUB | | | | | |
| Transit gateway ID Info | | | | | |
| tgw-018513d9b014392ca (Internet-TGW) | | | | | |
| Attachment type Info | | | | | |
| VPC | | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| Select and configure your VPC attachment. DNS support Info IPv6 support Info VPC ID Select the VPC to attach to the transit gateway. | | | | | |
| vpc-0fd3fa676a53c7463 (SEC_VPC) | | | | | |
| Subnet IDs Info Select the subnets in which to create the transit gateway VPC attachment. | | | | | |
| ✓ us-west-2a | subnet-0d087c230a20d5a9c (SEC-TGW-A) ▼ | | | | |
| ✓ us-west-2b | subnet-0ef1ac2b3c98b2592 (SEC-TGW-B) | | | | |
| us-west-2c | No subnet available | | | | |
| us-west-2d No subnet available | | | | | |
| subnet-0d087c230a20d5a9c | Subnet-0ef1ac2b3c98b2592 X | | | | |

h. Repeat the process for the other two VPC IDs, spokes A and B. For the subnet VPC attachment, select the corresponding AZ for each, then the *Subnet ID* dropdown list shows the spoke subnet that you created.
i. Wait for the State to become Available.

| Create Transit Gateway Attachment Actions 👻 | | | | | | | |
|---|-------------------------------------|--------------------------------|------------------|-----------------|---------------|-----------|---|
| Q, F | ilter by tags and attributes or sea | arch by keyword | | | | | |
| | Name ~ | Transit Gateway attachment ID- | Transit Gateway∽ | Resource type - | Resource ID 👻 | State | Ŧ |
| | TGW-attach-A | tgw-attach-0f19afc79167adf6c | tgw-0a6e104f0 | VPC | vpc-0160b2 | available | |
| | TGW-attach-B | tgw-attach-079a39bb958f2bfe4 | tgw-0a6e104f0 | VPC | vpc-02ba18 | available | |
| | TGW_Sec_VPC_Attachment | tgw-attach-0bd4ebf7075a4abc3 | tgw-0a6e104f0 | VPC | vpc-0786d4 | available | |

- 4. Create TGW associations:
 - a. In the AWS console, open the VPC service.
 - b. Select Transit Gateway Route Tables, then select the spoke route table.
 - c. On the Associations tab, click the Create Association button.
 - d. From the Choose attachment to associate dropdown list, select the spoke 1 VPC.
 - e. Click Create association.
 - f. Repeat the process for spoke B, which will be the second association for the route table.
 - g. Wait for both associations to achieve the Associated state before proceeding.
 - h. Next, select the security route table.
 - i. Repeat the same as above to add the security VPC attachment to the security TGW route table. Click *Create* association.



You should associate the security attachment using the TGW-Subnets to the security route table. The spoke attachments will be associated to the spoke route table.

- **5.** Add routes to the security TGW route table:
 - a. In the AWS console, open the VPC service.
 - b. Select Transit Gateway Route Tables, then select the security route table.
 - c. Add a static route for each spoke subnet and select spoke VPC attachments.
- 6. Add routes to the spoke TGW route table:
 - a. In the AWS console, open the VPC service.
 - b. Select Transit Gateway Route Tables, then select the spoke route table.
 - c. Add a static route for 0.0.0.0/0 to the security VPC attachment.

d. Add specific null routes: Spoke1(A) subnet, Spok2(B) Subnet, and SEC-Public Subnets.

| VPC > Transit gateway route tables > tgv | w-rtb-0b9e9052ad033e294 |
|--|-------------------------|
|--|-------------------------|

| w-rtb-0b9e9052a | <i>,</i> , | | |
|---|---|---|--|
| Details | | | |
| Transit gateway route table ID tgw-rtb-0b9e9052ad033e294 Transit gateway ID tgw-018513d9b014392ca | State ⊘ Available | Default association route table No | Default propagation route table No |
| Associations Propagations | Prefix list references Routes | Tags | |
| | | | |
| Filter routes by CIDR (2) | | | |
| ▼ Filter routes by CIDR (2) Exact CIDR Select a valid IP4 or IPv6 CIDR. | Longest prefix match Enter a valid IP4 or IPv6 and press enter. | Supernet of match Select a valid IP4 or IPv6 CIDR. | Subnet of match Select a valid IP4 or IPv6 CIDR. |
| Exact CIDR | | • | |
| Exact CIDR iselect a valid IP4 or IPv6 CIDR. | Enter a valid IP4 or IPv6 and press enter. | Select a valid IP4 or IPv6 CIDR. | Select a valid IP4 or IPv6 CIDR. |
| Exact CIDR iselect a valid IP4 or IPv6 CIDR. | Enter a valid IP4 or IPv6 and press enter. | Select a valid IP4 or IPv6 CIDR. Q 0.0.0.0/0, ::/0 | Select a valid IP4 or IPv6 CIDR. |
| elect a valid IP4 or IPv6 CIDR. | Enter a valid IP4 or IPv6 and press enter. | Select a valid IP4 or IPv6 CIDR. | Select a valid IP4 or IPv6 CIDR. Q 0.0.0.0/0, ::/0 0.0.0.0/0 X |
| xact CIDR elect a valid IP4 or IPv6 CIDR. Q. 0.0.0.0/0, ::/0 Routes (3) Q. Filter routes | Enter a valid IP4 or IPv6 and press enter. | Select a valid IP4 or IPv6 CIDR. | Select a valid IP4 or IPv6 CIDR. Q 0.0.0.0/0, ::/0 0.0.0.0/0 × ::/0 × |
| xact CIDR elect a valid IP4 or IPv6 CIDR. Q 0.0.0/0, ::/0 Routes (3) Q Filter routes | Enter a valid IP4 or IPv6 and press enter. | Select a valid IP4 or IPv6 CIDR. Q 0.0.0.0/0, ::/0 C Ac | Select a valid IP4 or IPv6 CIDR. Q 0.0.0/0, ::/0 0.0.0.0/0 × ::/0 × tions ▼ Create static route < 1 > @ Resource type ▼ Rout |
| Exact CIDR Lelect a valid IP4 or IPv6 CIDR. Q 0.0.0.0/0, ::/0 Routes (3) Q Filter routes CIDR | Enter a valid IP4 or IPv6 and press enter. 0.0.0.0, :: Attachment ID | Select a valid IP4 or IPv6 CIDR. Q 0.0.0.0/0, ::/0 C Action Resource ID V | Select a valid IP4 or IPv6 CIDR. Q 0.0.0.0/0, ::/0 0.0.0.0/0 × ::/0 × tions ▼ Create static route < 1 > @ Resource type ▼ Route |

Creating an Internet gateway

To create an Internet gateway:

- 1. In the AWS console, open the VPC service.
- 2. Click the Create Internet Gateway button.
- 3. In the *Name tag* field, enter the desired name.
- 4. Click Create.
- 5. Attach the Internet gateway to the security VPC by selecting the Internet gateway and selecting *Attach to VPC* from the *Actions* menu.
- 6. Select the security VPC in the VPC dropdown list and click the Attach button to save.

Creating VPC route tables

To create a VPC route table:

- 1. In the AWS console, open the VPC service.
- 2. Configure two spoke VPC route tables:
 - **a.** Select *Route Tables*, then click the *Create route table* button.
 - b. Configure the desired name, then select the spoke A VPC. Click the Create button.
 - c. Repeat the process for the spoke B VPC.
 - d. Select the spoke A VPC route table. On the Routes tab, click the Edit routes button.
 - e. Click Add Route.
 - f. In the *Destination* field, specify 0.0.0.0/0.
 - g. For the Target, specify the Transit Gateway (TGW). Click Save Routes.
 - h. On the Subnet Associations tab, click the Edit subnet associations button.
 - i. Select the spoke subnet that you just created, then click Save.

| VPC-A | | rtb-0447130e | 8859c50df | subnet-05616fc1a92cce571 | - | Yes |
|------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------|-------------------|--------------------------|-----------------|-----|
| VPC-B | | rtb-048232ec | 121dac120 | subnet-0e7f910e45fc879e8 | - | Yes |
| | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | |
| 4 | | | | | | |
| Route Table: rtb-0447130e8859c50df | | | | | | |
| Route Table. 10-0447 1506665965001 | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | |
| Summary Routes | Subnet Associations | Edge Associations | Route Propagation | Tags | | |
| Summary Routes | Subnet Associations | Edge Associations | Route Propagation | Tags | | |
| Summary Routes Edit routes | Subnet Associations | Edge Associations | Route Propagation | Tags | | |
| Edit routes | | | Route Propagation | Tags | | |
| Edit routes | Subnet Associations View All routes | Edge Associations | Route Propagation | Tags | | |
| Edit routes | | | Route Propagation | Tags | Target | |
| Edit routes Destination | | | Route Propagation | Tags | Target | |
| Edit routes | | | Route Propagation | Tags | Target local | |

- j. Repeat the process for the spoke B route table.
- 3. Configure the security VPC internal route table:
 - **a.** Click the *Create route table* button.
 - **b.** Configure Sec_VPC_Internal as the name. This will be the route for internal traffic targeting the TGW. Select the security VPC.
 - c. Click the Create button.
 - d. Select the security VPC internal route table. On the Routes tab, click the Edit routes button.
 - e. Click Add Route.
 - f. In the *Destination* field, enter 0.0.0.0/0. Use the TGW as the target.
 - g. Click Save changes.
 - h. On the Subnet Associations tab, click the Edit subnet associations button.
 - i. Select the internal/private subnets for both VPC availability zones (AZ) A and B, then click the Save button.
- 4. Configure the security VPC external route table:
 - a. Click the Create route table button.
 - b. Configure Sec_VPC_External as the name. This will be the Internet-facing route table. Select the security VPC.

- c. Click the *Create* button.
- d. Select the security VPC external route table. On the Routes tab, click the Edit routes button.
- **e.** Add the following routes:

| Destination | Target |
|-------------|------------------|
| 0.0.0/0 | Internet gateway |
| 10.1.1.0/24 | TGW |
| 10.2.1.0/24 | TGW |

- f. On the Subnet Associations tab, click the Edit subnet associations button.
- g. Add the management, public, and heartbeat subnets for security VPC AZs, then click the Save button.
- 5. Configure the route table for return traffic to the spoke VPCs from the FortiGate:
 - a. Click the Create route table button.
 - b. Configure Sec_VPC_TGW as the name. Select the security VPC.
 - **c.** Click the *Create* button.
 - d. On the Routes tab, click the Edit routes button.
 - **e.** Add the following routes:

| Destination | Target |
|-------------|--------|
| 10.1.1.0/24 | TGW |
| 10.2.1.0/24 | TGW |

- f. On the Subnet Associations tab, click the Edit subnet associations button.
- g. Select the TGW subnets for both AZs A and B, then click the Save button.



You will add a route that targets the ENI ID of port2 of the primary FortiGate in a later step.

Deploying FortiGate-VM from AWS marketplace

To deploy the FortiGate-VM from the AWS marketplace:

1. On the AWS marketplace, find a FortiGate-VM listing and version available for selection. This example uses FortiGate-VM On-Demand 6.2.1, ami-0439b030915c59e67, on c5.xlarge instances. Available versions may change.



Deploying a high availability (HA) pair requires four network interfaces. Instances smaller than x.large do not support four network interfaces and do not work for this deployment type.

2.

| 1. Choose AMI 2. Choose Instance Type | 3. C | onfigure Instance | 4. Add Storage | 5. Add Tags | 6. Conf | igure S | ecurity Group | 7. Review |
|---|------|-------------------------------|---|-----------------------------------|-----------------|---------|---------------|---------------------|
| Step 3: Configure Instance Configure the instance to suit your require | | | multiple instances | s from the same AM | Al, requ | iest S | pot instances | to take advantage o |
| Number of instances | () | 1 | | Launch into Auto | o Scalir | ng Gro | oup (j) | |
| Purchasing option | (j) | 🗆 Request Sp | oot instances | | | | | |
| Network | () | vpc-0786d46 | 1404402bc4 Sec | c_VPC | ٣ | С | Create new V | PC |
| Subnet | (i) | subnet-0ad79 249 IP Addres | | Public-A us-west-2 | a v | | Create new s | ubnet |
| Auto-assign Public IP | (j) | Enable | | | • | | | |
| Placement group | (i) | Add instan | ce to placement g | Iroup | | | | |
| Capacity Reservation | () | Open | | | ٣ | C | Create new Ca | apacity Reservation |
| IAM role | (i) | None | | | Ŧ | С | Create new IA | M role |
| CPU options | (i) | Specify CP | U options | | | | | |
| Shutdown behavior | () | Stop | | | • | | | |
| Enable termination protection | (i) | Protect aga | ainst accidental te | ermination | | | | |
| Monitoring | (j) | Enable Clo Additional cha | udWatch detailed arges apply. | monitoring | | | | |
| EBS-optimized instance | i | 🗹 Launch as | EBS-optimized ins | stance | | | | |
| Tenancy | (j) | | a shared hardwar arges will apply fo | e instance or dedicated tenanc | ▼ ;y. | | | |
| Elastic Inference | | | stic Inference acc | | | | | |

- 3. Deploy the VM with only one network interface with public IP address assignment enabled.
- 4. Repeat the steps for the second VM instance in a second availability zone.
- 5. To enable management access to the FortiGate-VMs and HA traffic flow, open the security group attached to the FortiGate-VMs:
 - a. In the AWS console, select Security Groups.
 - b. Click the Create Security Group button.
 - c. Add a rule with a source of 0.0.0.0/0 for all traffic types.
 - **d.** Assign the rule to all interfaces on both FortiGate-VMs. The next step in the process, Adding network interfaces and elastic IP addresses to the FortiGate-VMs on page 149, explains creating additional network interfaces. You can tighten the security group later.

Adding network interfaces and elastic IP addresses to the FortiGate-VMs

To add network interfaces and elastic IP addresses to the FortiGate-VMs:

- **1.** Add network interfaces:
 - a. In the AWS console, open the Elastic Compute Cloud (EC2) service.
 - b. Select Network Interfaces, then click the Create Network Interface button.
 - c. Provide a description of the interface, specify the private subnet in availability zone A and specify the security group created in Deploying FortiGate-VM from AWS marketplace on page 148.
 - d. Click Yes, Create.
 - e. Click the newly created interface. From the Actions dropdown list, select Change Source/Dest Check. Disable Source/Dest Check and save.
 - f. From the Actions dropdown list, select Attach.

- g. From the dropdown list, select the first FortiGate-VM. Click Attach.
- h. Repeat the process for the second FortiGate-VM.
- 2. Repeat step 1 for the secondary FortiGate-VM. Each FortiGate-VM will be attached with four network interfaces:

| Port | Purpose |
|--------------|--|
| Port1 (eth0) | Public network IP address. Elastic IP address (EIP) only for primary FortiGate in high availability group. |
| Port2 (eth1) | Private network IP address |
| Port3 (eth2) | Heartbeat network IP address |
| Port4 (eth3) | Management network IP address. EIP on each FortiGate. |

Create Network Interface

| Description | FGT-A-P2 | | 0 | |
|------------------------|--|---|---|---|
| Subnet* | Subnet* subnet-0754639799d506afe | | - C 0 | |
| IPv4 Private IP | Auto-asCustom | isign 🚯 | | |
| Elastic Fabric Adapter | • | | | |
| Securit | ty groups* | sg-085206d44b8d92f08 💿 🚯 | | |
| | | | | ٥ |
| | | Q Filter by attributes or search by ke | yword | $ \langle \langle 1 \text{ to 3 of 3} \rangle \rangle $ |
| | | Group ID - Group nam | ne - Description | * |
| | | sg-085206d44 Fortinet For | tiG This security group was generated by AWS Marketplace and is based | d on recommended settings for F |
| | | sg-0de336d7b default | default VPC security group | |
| | | sg-0faf293e5a launch-wiza | ard-1 launch-wizard-1 created 2019-10-01T15:58:03.267-07:00 | |

- 3. Add elastic IP addresses (EIPs):
 - a. In the AWS console, open the EC2 service.
 - b. Select Elastic IPs, then click the Allocate new address button.
 - c. Accept the defaults, then click the *Allocate* button.
 - d. Repeat steps a-c twice for a total of three EIPs:
 - One EIP is for port1 that will move to the secondary FortiGate-VM during failover.
 - Two EIPs are for high availability (HA) management ports.
- 4. Attach three EIPs as follows:
 - **a.** Port 1 of the primary FortiGate by selecting *Network Interface* as the *Resource Type* and its eth0 ENI network interface to associate.
 - **b.** Port 4 of the primary FortiGate by selecting *Network Interface* as the *Resource Type* and its eth3 ENI network interface to associate.
 - c. Port 4 of the secondary FortiGate by selecting *Network Interface* as the *Resource Type* and its eth 3ENI network interface to associate.

The primary FortiGate port 1 EIP will fail over to the secondary FortiGate in case of failure.

Port4 elastic IPs are not accessible until you form an HA cluster.

Configuring the FortiGate-VMs

To configure the FortiGate-VMs:

- 1. Log in to the primary FortiGate-VM:
 - a. In the browser, enter https:// followed by the by the port1 (eth0) public IP address.
 - b. Click Advanced, then proceed with the warning.
 - **c.** Enter admin and the instance ID as the username and password, respectively, for the primary FortiGate-VM, and proceed to change the default password.
- 2. Configure the primary FortiGate-VM:
 - a. Go to Network > Interfaces. Confirm all four port IP address settings.
 - **b.** Go to *Network* > *Static Routes*. Set the static route for port1 and port2 to the corresponding gateway on each FortiGate-VM. Usually the last number is 1 for the same subnet (i.e. 10.0.0.1) on AWS.
 - c. Ensure that the 10.2.1.0/24 and 10.1.1.0/24 (or your internal subnet CIDR) route has been created to forward internal traffic out of port2.
 - **d.** Go to *System > HA*. Configure high availability (HA) settings. After enabling active-passive mode, you can only access the FortiGate-VM through the HA management port (elastic IP address on port4).
 - i. From the Mode dropdown list, select Active-Passive.
 - ii. In the *Device priority* field, enter a value that will be higher than the one you configure for the secondary node.
 - iii. Configure the Group name and Password fields.
 - iv. Enable Session pickup.
 - v. For Heartbeat interfaces, select port3.
 - vi. Enable *Management Interface Reservation*. From the *Interface* dropdown list, select *port4*. Specify the gateway for the same subnet.
 - vii. Enable Unicast Heartbeat. Specify the port3 IP address of the peer FortiGate.
- **3.** Log in to and configure the secondary FortiGate-VM by repeating steps 1-2. When configuring device priority in HA settings, set a lower value than that of the primary node.
- 4. Configure policies to forward internal traffic out from port1. You only need to configure such policies on the primary FortiGate-VM, as the policy configuration will synchronize between the FortiGate-VMs.

| ID | Name | Source | Destination | Schedule | Service | Action | NAT | |
|-------------|---------------------------------|--------|-------------|----------|---------|----------|----------|--|
| 🗖 🔚 port1 - | □ ■ port1 → ■ port2 ① | | | | | | | |
| 2 | Incoming | 🗉 all | 💷 all | G always | ALL | ✓ ACCEPT | Oisabled | |
| 🔳 🗎 port2 - | □ Image: port2 → Image: port1 1 | | | | | | | |
| 1 | outgoing | 🗏 all | 💷 all | C always | ALL | ✓ ACCEPT | Enabled | |

5. You must configure a VDOM exception to prevent interface synchronization between the two FortiGates. Run the following commands in the FortiOS CLI:

```
config system vdom-exception
  edit 1
    set object system.interface
  next
  edit 2
    set object router.static
  next
  edit 3
    set object firewall.vip
  next
end
```

6. (Optional) You an configure an AWS SDN connector to allow population of dynamic objects such as policy objects. See Configuring the SDN connector to populate dynamic objects.

Updating the route table and adding an IAM policy

To update the route table and add an IAM policy:

- **1.** Update the route table:
 - **a.** After configuring the internal network ports, you must route all internal traffic to the elastic network interface (ENI) of the primary FortiGate-VM port2. In the AWS console, open the Elastic Cloud Compute service.
 - b. Select Instances, then select the primary FortiGate-VM.
 - c. On the Description tab, select port2 (eth1) and copy the interface ID.
 - d. Save the content into a text editor.
 - e. In the AWS console, open the VPC service.
 - f. Select *Route Tables*, then select the Sec_VPC_TGW route table.
 - g. On the Routes tab, click the Edit Routes button.
 - h. Add the following route:

| Destination | Target |
|-------------|---|
| 0.0.0/0 | Paste the ENI ID of port2 of the primary FortiGate. |

- i. Click Save.
- j. Ensure that the Sec_VPC_TGW route table has the following routes:

| Destination | Target | |
|-------------|--|--|
| 10.1.1.0/24 | Transit Gateway (TGW) | |
| 10.2.1.0/24 | TGW | |
| 0.0.0/0 | ENI ID of port2 of the primary FortiGate. | |
| 10.0.0/16 | Local. Depends on the security VPC network settings. | |
| | | |



Check that the TGW subnets (security VPC TGW subnets) for both availability zones A and B are associated with this routing table.

2. Both firewalls need an IAM policy attached to make API calls to AWS to move the elastic IP address on port1 and network interface on port2 between primary and secondary FortiGate-VMs. Go to the AMI service and create a role with the following policy: {

```
"Version": "2012-10-17",
"Statement": [
    {
        "Action": [
           "ec2:Describe*",
           "ec2:AssociateAddress",
           "ec2:AssignPrivateIpAddresses",
        "ec2:UnassignPrivateIpAddresses",
        "ec2:ReplaceRoute"
    ],
```

```
"Resource": "*",
"Effect": "Allow"
}
```

3. Attach the AMI role to both FortiGate-VMs by selecting the FortiGate EC2 instance and selecting Attach/Replace IAM Role in the Actions menu.

Testing FortiGate-VM HA failover

The following prerequisites are required for successful failover:

- Two FortiGates exist in the same virtual private cloud and different availability zones. The two FortiGates must also
 have the same FortiOS build (FGT_VM64_AWS or FGT_VM64_AWSONDEMAND) installed and the same
 instance shape. In this example, both FortiGate-VM instances were deployed as C5.xlarge.
- The high availability (HA) management port can resolve DNS and make API calls to AWS. The HA management
 port is not blocked by the security group and routed to the Internet gateway on all cluster members.
- If using FortiGate-VM BYOL instances, both FortiGate-VMs have valid licenses.
- Minimum sufficient IAM roles as shown in Updating the route table and adding an IAM policy on page 152

To test FortiGate-VM HA failover:

```
1. To ensure that the FortiGate-VMs are in sync, run get system ha status:
   master # get sys ha stat
  HA Health Status: OK
  Model: FortiGate-VM64-AWSONDEMAND
  Mode: HA A-P
  Group: 0
  Debug: 0
  Cluster Uptime: 1 days 1:50:18
  Cluster state change time: 2019-01-31 18:20:47
  Master selected using:
   <2019/01/31 18:20:47> FGTAWS0006AB1961 is selected as the master because it has the
        largest value of override priority.
   <2019/01/31 18:20:47> FGTAWS0006AB1961 is selected as the master because it's the only
        member in the cluster.
   ses pickup: enable, ses pickup delay=disable
   override: disable
  Master: FGTAWS0006AB1961, HA operating index = 0
   Slave : FGTAWS000B29804F, HA operating index = 1
2. Enable debug mode on the secondary FortiGate:
   diagnose debug enable
   diagnose debug application awsd -1
   Debug messages will be on for unlimited time.
3. Shut down the primary FortiGate. In the event of a successful failover, the secondary FortiGate CLI shows the
  following:
   slave # Become HA master
   send_vip_arp: vd root master 1 intf port1 ip 10.0.10.11
   send vip arp: vd root master 1 intf port2 ip 10.0.11.11
   awsd get instance id i-0b29804fd38976af4
   awsd get iam role WikiDemoHARole
   awsd get region us-west-2
   awsd get vpc id vpc-0ade7ea6e64befbfc
```

awsd doing ha failover for vdom root awsd associate elastic ip for port1 awsd associate elastic ip allocation eipalloc-06b849dbb0f76555f to 10.0.10.11 of eni eni-0ab045a4d6dce664a awsd associate elastic ip successfully awsd update route table rtb-0a7b4fec57feb1a21, replace route of dst 0.0.0.0/0 to eni-0c4c085477aaff8c5 awsd update route successfully

4. Verify on AWS that the public EIP on port1 and the Sec_VPC_Internal route table point to the new primary FortiGate port2 ENI.

Deploying FortiGate-VM using Terraform

See the following:

- Single FortiGate-VM deployment
- Active-passive HA cluster deployment in the same availability zone
- Active-passive HA cluster deployment across two availability zones
- Active-active FortiGate-VM pair deployment using internal and external network load balancers
- AWS Transit Gateway hub-spoke FortiGate-VM deployment across two availability zones

Support

For issues, see this GitHub project's Issues tab. For other questions related to the GitHub project, contact github@fortinet.com.

SDN connector integration with AWS

Certificate-based SDN connector integration

See the FortiOS Administration Guide.

Configuring an AWS SDN connector using IAM roles

The following summarizes minimum sufficient IAM roles for this deployment:

```
{
   "Version": "2012-10-17",
   "Statement": [
   {
    "Action": [
    "ec2:Describe*"
   ],
    "Resource": "*",
   "Effect": "Allow"
   }
  ]
}
```

For instances running in AWS (on demand or BYOL), you can set up the AWS SDN connector using AWS Identify and Access Management (IAM) credentials.

IAM authentication is available only for FGT-AWS and FGT-AWSONDEMAND platforms.

To configure AWS SDN connector using the GUI:

- 1. Configure the AWS SDN connector:
 - a. Go to Security Fabric > External Connectors.
 - b. Click Create New, and select Amazon Web Services (AWS).

c. Configure as shown:

| FortiGate VM64-AWS | OND | EMAND FGTAWS000450F57B | >_ [] |
|----------------------------|-----|-------------------------|--|
| ★ Favorites | > | Edit External Connector | |
| | | | Public SDN Connector Setup Guides Amazon Web Services C Google Cloud Platform C Microsoft Azure C Private SDN Connector Setup Guides Consection Centric Infrastructure C Mugge Virtualized Services Platform C OpenStack Connector C OpenStack C |
| ♥ WiFi & Switch Controller | > | _ | |
| 0 | | OK Cancel | |

- 2. Create a dynamic firewall address for the configured AWS SDN connector:
 - **a.** Go to Policy & Objects > Addresses.
 - **b.** Click *Create New*, then select *Address*.
 - **c.** Configure the address as shown, selecting the desired filter in the *Filter* dropdown list. The following is an example for a public SDN address type:

| FortiGate VM64-AWS0 | ONDE | MAND FGTAWS000450 | | | >_ [] |
|--|------------------|---|-----------------------------------|-----------|---|
| ★ Favorites | > | Edit Address | | | |
| Bashboard Security Fabric Anterior Active System Policy & Objects Firewall Policy Authentication Rules | > > > ~ | Name Color Type SDN Connector SDN address type 3 Filter | aws-ec2 | | Dynamic Address Goider Configuring an AWS Dynamic Address Configuring an AWS Dynamic Address Configuring an AWS Dynamic Address Configuring an Google Cloud Platform Dynamic Address Configuring an Openace Cloud Infrastructure Dynamic Address Configuring Address Configuring an Opena |
| Addresses Internet Service Database Services Schedules Virtual IPs IP Pools Protocol Options | ☆ | Interface Show in Address List C Comments Tags Sel | any Virte a comment. orgs | | • Video lutoriais (3 |
| Traffic Shapers Traffic Shaping Policy Traffic Shaping Profile Security Profiles VPN User & Authentication WIFI & Switch Controller ML log & Report | > > > > | | | OK Cancel | |
| | | | | | |

The following is an example for a private SDN address type:

| FortiGate VM64-AWSO | ONDEMAND FGTAWS000450F57B | ≻_ [] |
|--|---|---|
| ★ Favorites | > Edit Address | |
| Boshboard Security Fabric Autowork System Policy & Objects Firewall Policy Authentication Rules Addresse Insternet Service Database Services Schedules Virtual IPs IP Pools Protocol Options | Name aws-eks1 Color # Change Type Fabric Connector Address SDN Connector SDN connector SDN address type Private Public All Filter | Dynamic Address Guider Configuring an AWS Dynamic Address C Configuring an AWS Dynamic Address C Configuring an Ocue Dynamic Address C Configuring an Ocue Oud Infrastructure Dynamic Address C Configuring an OpenStack Dynamic Address C Configuring an OpenStack Dynamic Address C C Documentation C Online Help C Video Tutorials C |
| Traffic Shapers Traffic Shaping Policy Traffic Shaping Profile ▲ Security Profiles □ VPN ▲ User & Authentication ♥ WiFi & Switch Controller 山 Log & Report | OK Cancel | · |

- 3. Ensure that the AWS SDN connector resolves dynamic firewall IP addresses:
 - **a.** Go to Policy & Objects > Addresses.
 - **b.** Hover over the address created in step 2 to see a list of IP addresses for instances that belong to the security group configured in step 2.

The following is an example for a public SDN address type:

| 🛉 Favorites | > | + Create | New 🕶 🥒 Edit 「 | Clone | Delete Search | | Q | | |
|---------------------------|---|-------------|--|-------|--------------------------------|---------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------|-------|
| Dashboard | > | Name | | Туре | Details | Interface | Visibility | Ref. | |
| Security Fabric | > | Address | | | 1100 | betails | mande | visionicy | Tech. |
| Network | > | | _ | | | | | | |
| System | > | FABRIC_ | | 1 | Subnet | 0.0.0/0 | | Visible | 0 |
| Policy & Objects | ~ | FIREWA | | RESS | Subnet | 0.0.0/0 | | Hidden | 0 |
| Firewall Policy | | SSLVPN | 34.222.246.198 54.188.139.177 | | IP Range | 10.212.134.200 - 10.212.134.210 | SSL-VPN tunnel interface (ssl.root) | Visible | 2 |
| Authentication Rules | | 🔳 all | • 54.218.229.229 | | Subnet | 0.0.0/0 | | Visible | 0 |
| Addresses | ☆ | 🗰 aws-ec2 | | 1 | Fabric Connector Address (AWS) | | | Visible | 1 |
| Internet Service Database | | 🗰 aws-eks | 1 | | Fabric Connector Address (AWS) | | | Visible | 1 |
| Services | | 😐 gmail.co | m | | FQDN | gmail.com | | Visible | 1 |
| Schedules | | 😐 login.mid | rosoft.com | | FQDN | login.microsoft.com | | Visible | 1 |
| Virtual IPs | | 😐 login.mic | rosoftonline.com | | FQDN | login.microsoftonline.com | | Visible | 1 |
| IP Pools | | 😐 login.win | dows.net | | FQDN | login.windows.net | | Visible | 1 |
| Protocol Options | | Ø none | | | Subnet 0.0.0/32 | | | Visible | 0 |
| Traffic Shapers | | Address | Group 2 | | | | | | |
| Traffic Shaping Policy | ĺ | Uildcar | d FODN (2) | | | | | | |
| Traffic Shaping Profile | | | | | | | | | |
| Security Profiles | > | | | | | | | | |
| l VPN | > | | | | | | | | |
| User & Authentication | > | | | | | | | | |
| WiFi & Switch Controller | > | | | | | | | | |
| Log & Report | > | | | | | | | | |

The following is an example for a private SDN address type:

| | > | Create Ne | w 🕶 🖉 Edit 🔚 🖸 | lone | Delete Search | | Q | | |
|---------------------------|---|--|---|------|--------------------------------|---------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------|------|
| Dashboard | > | | Name | | Туре | Details | Interface | Visibility | Ref. |
| Security Fabric | > | | | | iype | Details | interfoce | Visibility | Ren |
| Network | > | Address 1 | _ | | | | | | |
| System | > | FABRIC_DE | | 1 | Subnet | 0.0.0/0 | | Visible | 0 |
| Policy & Objects | ~ | FIREWAL a | ws-eks1 resolves to: | ESS | Subnet | 0.0.0/0 | | 8 Hidden | 0 |
| Firewall Policy | | SSLVPN_ | 192.168.114.197 192.168.167.20 | | IP Range | 10.212.134.200 - 10.212.134.210 | SSL-VPN tunnel interface (ssl.root) | Visible | 2 |
| Authentication Rules | | 🔳 all | 192.168.180.72 192.168.181.186 | | Subnet | 0.0.0.0/0 | | Visible | 0 |
| Addresses | ☆ | 🗱 aws-ec2 | • 192.168.210.107 | | Fabric Connector Address (AWS) | | | Visible | 1 |
| Internet Service Database | | 🗱 aws-eks1 | | | Fabric Connector Address (AWS) | | | Visible | 1 |
| Services | | 📟 gmail.com | | FQDN | gmail.com | | Visible | 1 | |
| Schedules | | Iogin.micros | soft.com | | FQDN | login.microsoft.com | | Visible | 1 |
| Virtual IPs | | login.microsoftonline.com login.windows.net none | | FQDN | login.microsoftonline.com | | Visible | 1 | |
| IP Pools | | | | FQDN | login.windows.net | | Visible | 1 | |
| Protocol Options | | | | | Subnet | 0.0.0/32 | | Visible | 0 |
| Traffic Shapers | | 🗄 Address Gr | oup 2 | | | | | | |
| Traffic Shaping Policy | | Wildcard F | ODN (2) | | | | | | |
| Traffic Shaping Profile | | | | | | | | | |
| Security Profiles | > | | | | | | | | |
| VPN | > | | | | | | | | |
| User & Authentication | > | | | | | | | | |
| WiFi & Switch Controller | > | | | | | | | | |

To configure AWS SDN connector using CLI commands:

```
1. Configure the AWS connector:
```

```
config system sdn-connector
  edit "aws1"
    set status enable
    set type aws
    set use-metadata-iam enable
    set update-interval 60
    next
end
```

2. Create a dynamic firewall address for the configured AWS SDN connector with the supported filter: Dynamic firewall address IPs are resolved by the SDN connector.

```
config firewall address
edit "aws-ec2"
set type dynamic
set sdn "aws1"
set filter "SecurityGroupId=sg-05f4749cf84267548"
set sdn-addr-type public
next
edit "aws-eks1"
set type dynamic
set sdn "aws1"
set filter "K8S_Region=us-west-2"
next
```

end

3. Confirm that the AWS SDN connector resolves dynamic firewall IP addresses using the configured filter:

```
config firewall address
edit "aws-ec2"
set type dynamic
set sdn "aws1"
set filter "SecurityGroupId=sg-05f4749cf84267548"
set sdn-addr-type public
```

```
config list
       edit "34.222.246.198"
        next.
        edit "54.188.139.177"
        next
        edit "54.218.229.229"
        next
     end
  next
  edit "aws-eks1"
     set type dynamic
     set sdn "aws1"
     set filter "K8S Region=us-west-2"
     config list
       edit "192.168.114.197"
        next
        edit "192.168.167.20"
        next.
        edit "192.168.180.72"
        next
        edit "192.168.181.186"
        next
        edit "192.168.210.107"
        next
     end
  next
end
```

AWS Kubernetes (EKS) SDN connector

AWS SDN connectors support dynamic address groups based on AWS Kubernetes (EKS) filters. The following summarizes minimum permissions for this deployment:

```
{
    "Version": "2012-10-17",
    "Statement": [
        {
            "Sid": "VisualEditor0",
            "Effect": "Allow",
            "Action": [
                "ec2:Describe*",
                "eks:DescribeCluster",
                "eks:ListClusters"
            ],
            "Resource": "*"
        }
    ]
}
```

Once you have the proper permissions for EKS, you must follow the steps at Managing Users or IAM Roles for your Cluster for EKS to properly pull data from the cluster. The following shows a successful pull of IP addresses from the EKS cluster:

```
awsd getting IPs from EKS cluster: dchao-cluster (us-west-2), endpoint:
    https://F57B834C1ADA8ED7FA3CAFB36073D384.gr7.us-west-2.eks.amazonaws.com
```

```
kube url: https://F57B834C1ADA8ED7FA3CAFB36073D384.gr7.us-west-
     2.eks.amazonaws.com/api/v1/services
kube host: F57B834C1ADA8ED7FA3CAFB36073D384.gr7.us-west-
     2.eks.amazonaws.com:443:100.21.79.123
kube url: https://F57B834C1ADA8ED7FA3CAFB36073D384.gr7.us-west-
     2.eks.amazonaws.com/api/v1/nodes
kube host: F57B834C1ADA8ED7FA3CAFB36073D384.gr7.us-west-
     2.eks.amazonaws.com:443:100.21.79.123
k8s node ip: 172.31.34.72, nodename: ip-172-31-34-72.us-west-2.compute.internal
cluster: dchao-cluster, region: us-west-2, zone: us-west-2b
k8s node ip: 18.237.109.243, nodename: ip-172-31-34-72.us-west-2.compute.internal
cluster: dchao-cluster, region: us-west-2, zone: us-west-2b
kube url: https://F57B834C1ADA8ED7FA3CAFB36073D384.gr7.us-west-
     2.eks.amazonaws.com/api/v1/pods
kube host: F57B834C1ADA8ED7FA3CAFB36073D384.gr7.us-west-
     2.eks.amazonaws.com:443:100.21.79.123
k8s pod ip: 172.31.34.72, podname: aws-node-7kbm5, namespace: kube-system
cluster: dchao-cluster, region: us-west-2, zone: us-west-2b
k8s pod ip: 172.31.45.127, podname: coredns-6f647f5754-85m88, namespace: kube-system
cluster: dchao-cluster, region: us-west-2, zone: us-west-2b
k8s pod ip: 172.31.38.147, podname: coredns-6f647f5754-87ch7, namespace: kube-system
cluster: dchao-cluster, region: us-west-2, zone: us-west-2b
k8s pod ip: 172.31.34.72, podname: kube-proxy-ks9pw, namespace: kube-system
cluster: dchao-cluster, region: us-west-2, zone: us-west-2b
```

After configuring the above, follow the instructions in the *FortiOS Cookbook* to complete configuration.

Populating threat feeds with GuardDuty

AWS GuardDuty is a managed threat detection service that monitors malicious or unauthorized behaviors/activities related to AWS resources. GuardDuty provides visibility of logs called "findings", and Fortinet provides a Lambda script called "aws-lambda-guardduty", which translates feeds from AWS GuardDuty findings into a list of malicious IP addresses in an S3 location, which a FortiGate-VM can consume as an external threat feed after being configured to point to the list's URL. To use this feature, you must subscribe to GuardDuty, CloudWatch, S3, and DynamoDB.

Installing and configuring GuardDuty requires knowledge of:

- CLI
- AWS Lambda function, DynamoDB, S3 bucket, and IAM
- Node.js

The Lambda script is available to download on GitHub.

Security implications

It is highly recommended that you create a dedicated AWS IAM role to run this Lambda function. The role should have limited permissions to restrict operation on a dedicated S3 bucket resource for only this project.

It is never suggested to attach a full control policy such as AmazonS3FullAccess, which has full permissions to all resources under your Amazon AWS account, to the role which runs the Lambda function. Allowing full-access permissions to all resources may put your resources at risk.

Following is a list of permissions required for the IAM role to run this project across the required AWS services:

| AWS service | Permission |
|-------------|---|
| S3 | ListBucket, HeadBucket, GetObject, PutObject, PutObjectAcl |
| DynamoDB | DescribeStream, ListStreams, Scan, GetShardIterator, GetRecords, UpdateItem |

Parameters

GuardDuty findings give visibility on the following:

- Severity: high/medium/low (associated with scores)
- · Where the behavior/activity occurred: Region, resource ID, account ID
- When: last seen date/time
- Count
- Detailed information
 - Affected resource: type/instance ID/image ID/port/resource type/image description/launch time/tags/network interfaces (public IP, private IP, subnet ID, VPC ID, security groups)
 - Action: type/connection direction
 - Actor
 - Additional

For more information about Amazon GuardDuty, see the Amazon GuardDuty official website.

There are five configurable environment variables in the Lambda function:

| Variable name | Туре | Description |
|------------------|---------|---|
| MIN_SEVERITY | Integer | The minimum severity to block an IP address. Defaults to 3. Value ranges from 1 to 10 by AWS GuardDuty definition. |
| S3_BUCKET | Text | S3 bucket name to store the IP block list file. No default value. Must specify. |
| S3_BLOCKLIST_KEY | Text | Path to the IP block list file within the S3 bucket. No default value. Must specify. The relative file path to the S3 bucket. |
| REGION | Text | AWS region to run Lambda, DynamoDB services. Must specify. |
| DDB_TABLE_NAME | Text | DynamoDB table name which stores malicious IP addresses from findings. Must specify. |

Installation

You can follow the installation steps below to setup this Lambda function:

Prerequisites

See below for a list of tools required to deploy this project before installation. Some prerequisites are platform-specific. Choose the right one for your OS (such as Windows, Linux, or macOS).

- Node.js (6.5.0 or later)
- npm. Although npm comes with Node.js, check here for how to install npm and manage the npm version.
- AWS account
- Git (latest version)
- *Git Bash (latest version). Git Bash is a solution for Windows platform users to run the following installation steps. The article Use git, ssh and npm on windows with Git Bash gives more information about setting up Git Bash on Windows.

Preparing the deployment package

When you have all prerequisites ready, you can continue the installation as below. The commands in each steps are intended to run in Terminal or Git Bash only.

You must create a deployment package from the local Git project repository, which will be uploaded for the Lambda function creation in a later step.

To prepare the deployment package:

- 1. Clone this project into the "guardduty" folder in your current local directory, and enter the project directory: \$ git clone https://github.com/fortinet/aws-lambda-guardduty.git guardduty \$ cd guardduty
- 2. Install project dependencies:
 - \$ npm install
- Build this project locally to create a deployment package .zip file. The file will be located in ./dist/aws_lambda_ guardduty.zip:
 - \$ npm run build

Setting up the S3 bucket

This project needs one S3 bucket. The example in the following steps creates an S3 bucket named "my-aws-lambdaguardduty". The example uses the bucket name in some configuration steps. Due to bucket naming limitations in S3, each bucket should have a globally unique name. Therefore, your bucket should have a different name than the example's. Write down your bucket name, since it is used in other configuration steps.

Create the S3 bucket to store the IP block list. In this example, the bucket is named my-aws-lambda-guardduty. This bucket is required to run this project. Although bucket creation is region-specific, once created, the bucket can be accessed from any region. Do not grant the bucket public access permissions. The Lambda function points to this bucket through its S3_BUCKET environment variable.

Setting up the DynamoDB table

One DynamoDB table with the stream feature enabled is required to store records of malicious IP addresses from GuardDuty findings. DynamoDB tables and Lambda functions are region-specific so you must create the table and the Lambda function in the same AWS region. A DynamoDB trigger on this table is created to cause the Lambda function to

execute. Since the Lambda function has not been created yet, instructions to create the trigger are provided later in Setting up the DynamoDB stream trigger.

- 1. Create the DynamoDB table. In this example, the table is named my-aws-lambda-guardduty-db.
 - **a.** For the primary key, do the following:
 - i. Input the value *finding_id*. This value is case-sensitive.
 - ii. From the data type dropdown list, select String.
 - **b.** Add a sort key:
 - i. Input the value ip. This value is case-sensitive.
 - ii. From the data type dropdown list, select String.
 - c. Check used default settings for Table settings.
 - d. Click Create.
- 2. Enable the Stream feature on the table.
 - a. On the Overview tab, click Manage Stream, select Keys only, then click Enable to save.
 - b. Write down the Latest stream ARN. This ARN is used in the IAM policy creation step.

Setting up the IAM role and policies

An IAM role is created to run the Lambda function. Three policies attach to the IAM role. The first one is a user-managed policy which grants permissions to operation on the S3 bucket my-aws-lambda-guardduty. The second one is a user-managed policy which grants permission to operation on the DynamoDB table my-aws-lambda-guardduty-db. The third one is an AWS-managed policy which allows the Lambda function to write logs to CloudWatch.

- 1. Create a policy to operate on the S3 bucket.
 - a. Choose S3 as its service.
 - **b.** In Access level, add ListBucket on List, HeadBucket and GetObject on Read, PutObject on Write, and PutObjectAcl on Permissions management.
 - c. In Resources, choose Specific.
 - i. For the *bucket* resource type, add the my-aws-lambda-guardduty S3 bucket ARN (for example, *arn:aws:s3:::my-aws-lambda-guardduty*) to restrict access to any file in the specific bucket only.
 - ii. For the object resource type, add the my-aws-lambda-guardduty S3 bucket ARN and a /* wildcard (for example, *arn:aws:s3:::my-aws-lambda-guardduty/**) to restrict access to any file in the specific bucket only.
 - d. Click Review Policy, then Save Changes. The policy in JSON form looks like the code snippet below:

```
{
```

```
"Version": "2012-10-17",
"Statement": [
  " {
     "Sid": "VisualEditor0",
     "Effect": "Allow",
     "Action": [
        "s3:PutObject",
        "s3:GetObject",
        "s3:ListBucket",
        "s3:PutObjectAcl"
     "],
     "Resource": [
        "arn:aws:s3:::my-aws-lambda-guardduty",
        "arn:aws:s3:::my-aws-lambda-guardduty/*"
     ]
  },
```

```
{
    "Sid": "VisualEditor1",
    "Effect": "Allow",
    "Action": "s3:HeadBucket",
    "Resource": "*"
  }
]
}
```

- 2. Create a policy to operate on the DynamoDB table.
 - a. Choose DynamoDB as its service.
 - **b.** In Access level, add ListStreams on List, DescribeStream, GetRecords, GetShardIterator, Scan on Read, and UpdateItem on Write.
 - c. In Resources, choose Specific.
 - d. Click Review Policy, then Save Changes. The policy in JSON form looks like the code snippet below:

```
{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [
     {
        "Sid": "VisualEditor0",
        "Effect": "Allow",
        "Action": [
           "dynamodb:GetShardIterator",
           "dynamodb:Scan",
           "dynamodb:UpdateItem",
           "dynamodb:DescribeStream",
           "dynamodb:GetRecords"
        ],
        "Resource": [
           "arn:aws:dynamodb:us-east-1:888888888888888:table/my-aws-lambda-guardduty-
                db/stream/*",
           "arn:aws:dynamodb:us-east-1:8888888888888:table/my-aws-lambda-guardduty-db"
        ]
     },
     {
        "Sid": "VisualEditor1",
        "Effect": "Allow",
        "Action": "dynamodb:ListStreams",
        "Resource": "*"
     }
  1
```

- 3. Create an IAM role to run the Lambda function.
 - a. Choose the Lamba service that will use this role.
 - b. Attach the two user-managed policies created in the previous steps to this role.
 - c. Attach the AWS-managed policy AWSLambdaBasicExecutionRole to this role.

Creating the Lambda function

The Lambda function is created with the deployment package generated in Preparing the deployment package on page 163. This package is uploaded directly to this Lambda function. The Lambda function has five configurable environment variables for severity, AWS region, DynamoDB table name, and IP block list file entry point.

- 1. Create a function that authors from scratch.
 - **a.** Give the function a unique name.
 - b. For its Runtime, select Node.js 6.10.
 - **c.** For *Role*, select *Choose an existing role*. Select the role created in Setting up the IAM role and policies on page 164.
- **2.** Set up the function code.
 - a. For code entry type, select Upload a .ZIP file. The Function package field appears.
 - **b.** For *Function package*, click *Upload* to upload the deployment package .zip file generated in Preparing the deployment package.
 - c. For Handler, enter index.handler.
- 3. Set up the environment variables. Note values for key fields are case-sensitive and should all be in upper case.
 - **a.** Add a key *MIN_SEVERITY* and input a value of 3.
 - **b.** Add a key S3_BUCKET and paste the name of the S3 bucket created in Setting up the S3 bucket on page 163. In this example, the S3 bucket name is my-aws-lambda-guardduty.
 - c. Add a key S3_BLOCKLIST_KEY and input a value of *ip_blocklist* or a different name as desired.
 - **d.** Add a key *REGION* and input the AWS region where your Lambda function and DynamoDB table are situated. For example, the region of US East (N. Virginia) is us-east-1. For information about AWS Regions, please see AWS Regions and Endpoints.
 - e. Add a key *DDB_TABLE_NAME* and input the name of the DynamoDB table created in Setting up the DynamoDB table on page 163. In this example, the DynamoDB table name is my-aws-lambda-guardduty-db.
- 4. Save the Lambda function.

Setting up the DynamoDB stream trigger

You must add a trigger to the DynamoDB table created in Setting up the DynamoDB table on page 163. This trigger is the key that causes the Lambda function to generate a full IP block list to a static file in the S3 bucket.

The following describes how to create a trigger on a DynamoDB table

- 1. In DynamoDB, click the table to toggle on its detail window.
- 2. On the Triggers tab, click Create Trigger, then Existing Lambda function from the dropdown list.
- 3. From the Function dropdown list, select the Lambda function created in Creating the Lambda function on page 166.
- 4. Leave the *Batch size* value at its default, which is normally 100.
- 5. Select the *Enable trigger* checkbox.
- 6. Click Create.

At this point, installation is complete, although the AWS CloudWatch and GuardDuty services need additional configuration to work with the Lambda function.

Setting up CloudWatch

In this section, a CloudWatch event rule is created to invoke the Lambda function based on events happening in GuardDuty findings. If you have not subscribed to GuardDuty yet, you must subscribe to it before moving on. For information about GuardDuty, see Amazon GuardDuty.

The following describes creating a new event rule.

- 1. For Event Source, choose Event Pattern, and select Events by Service from the dropdown list.
- 2. For Service Name, select GuardDuty from the dropdown list.
- 3. For Event Type, select GuardDuty Finding from the dropdown list.
- 4. Check that the Event Pattern Preview looks like the code snippet below.

```
"source": [
    "aws.guardduty"
],
    "detail-type": [
        "GuardDuty Finding"
]
}
```

- 5. For the targets, click Add Target* and select Lambda function from the dropdown list.
- 6. For the Function, select the Lambda function you created from the dropdown list.
- 7. Click Configure rule details.
- 8. Name the rule as desired.
- 9. For State, select the Enabled checkbox.
- **10.** Click Create Rule.

Testing the setup

{

{

When all services have been created and configured properly, execute this simple test to verify your work.

- 1. Create and run the test event from the Lambda function:
 - a. From the Test Event dropdown list, select Configure test events.
 - b. Select Create new test event to add a test event with the content as the code snippet below.

```
"id": "fa9fa4a5-0232-188d-da1c-af410bcfc344",
"detail": {
  "service": {
     "serviceName": "guardduty",
     "action": {
        "networkConnectionAction": {
          "connectionDirection": "INBOUND",
          "remoteIpDetails": {
             "ipAddressV4": "192.168.123.123"
           }
        }
     },
     "additionalInfo": {
        "threatListName": "GeneratedFindingThreatListName">
     },
     "eventLastSeen": "2018-07-18T22:12:01.720Z"
  },
```

```
"severity": 3
}
```

- c. From the *Test Event* dropdown list again, select the event you have just created, then click *Test* to execute this Lambda function with the given event.
- 2. Verify the test result.

1

- **a.** If everything was set up correctly, you will see *Execution result: succeeded* on the top of the page of this Lambda function.
- **b.** Check and see a record with *finding_id fa9fa4a5-0232-188d-da1c-af410bcfc344* and *ip 192.168.123.123* is in the DynamoDB table my-aws-lambda-guardduty-db.
- c. Check and see the file *ip_blocklist* resides in the S3 bucket my-aws-lambda-guardduty.
- d. Check that the ip_blocklist file has a Read object permission for Everyone under the Public access section.
- e. Check that the ip_blocklist is accessible through its link in browser (e.g. https://s3-us-east-1.amazonaws.com/***my-aws-lambda-guardduty***/ip_blocklist)
- f. Check that the ip_blocklist file contains 192.168.123.123 in a single line in its content.

(Optional) Generating sample findings in GuardDuty

Amazon GuardDuty monitors your AWS infrastructures on a continuous basis to detect malicious or unauthorized behavior and creates records based on such findings. If you have just subscribed to GuardDuty for the first time, you will see no findings in the list. You can click *Generate sample findings* under *Settings* and get some samples. Then several dummy findings marked as "[SAMPLE]" are created. As long as you have set up the Lambda function and CloudWatch correctly, some of those sample findings trigger the CloudWatch event rule to run the Lambda function. A few new IP addresses eventually appear in the ip_blocklist.

Setting up the FortiGate(s)

As a FortiGate-VM feature, GuardDuty integration introduces the ability to dynamically import external block lists from an HTTP server. You can use the block lists to enforce your organization's specialized security requirements. This can include long term policies, such as always blocking access to certain websites, or short term requirements to block access to known compromised locations. Since these lists are dynamically imported, the FortiGate-VM instantly imports any changes made to the list.

In this example, the FortiGate-VM integrates with AWS GuardDuty to populate a list, which is treated as a "threat feed". You can use a threat feed to deny access to a source or destination IP address in web filter and DNS filter profiles, SSL inspection exemptions, and as a source/destination in proxy policies. The block list is stored as an external resource, which is dynamically imported to the FortiGate-VM at a configured interval/refresh rate to maintain an updated list. The administrator can configure multiple threat feeds in each profile.

- 1. To configure a threat feed, go to Security Fabric > Fabric Connectors, then click Create New, then IP Address under Threat Feeds.
- 2. The following example creates an IP address connector. The resource name appears as an external IP block list in DNS filter profiles and as a source/destination in proxy policies. Configure the following:
 - **a.** URI of external resource: link to an external resource file. The file should be a plain text file with one IP address on each line. In this example, the IP address is https://s3-us-east-1.amazonaws.com/***my-aws-lambda-guardduty***/ip_blocklist. The file size is up to 10 MB or 128000 lines of text, whichever is more restrictive.
 - b. Refresh Rate: time interval to refresh the external resource. The rate can be between 1 to 43200 minutes.

| Dashboard | > | New Fabric Connector | |
|----------------------------|---|---|--|
| 🔆 Security Fabric | ~ | | |
| Physical Topology | | Threat Feeds | |
| Logical Topology | | | |
| Security Rating | | | |
| Automation | | | |
| Settings | | IP Address | |
| Fabric Connectors | ☆ | | |
| 🖿 FortiView | > | Connector Settings | |
| Network | > | Name jkato-test-feed | |
| System | > | | |
| 💄 Policy & Objects | > | Resource name will appear as an "External IP Block List" in DNS Profiles and as a "Source/Destination" in IPv4 policy, IPv6 Policy | |
| Security Profiles | > | Proxy Policy. | |
| □ VPN | > | | |
| 🛔 User & Device | > | URI of external resource 1 https://s3.us-east-2.amazonaws.com/ip | |
| 🗢 WiFi & Switch Controller | > | | |
| 🔟 Log & Report | > | Comments AWS Guard Duty 14/255 Status | |
| C Monitor | > | Status | |
| | | | |
| | | OK Cancel | |

3. Go to *Policy & Objects > IPv4 Policy* and create/edit a policy. In the *Source* and *Destination* fields, you should be able to add the new feed.

| 🚯 Dashboard | > - | New Policy | | | | |
|---------------------------|-----|--------------------|---------------|--------------------------|-------------------------------------|----------|
| 🔆 Security Fabric | > | | | External Resources | 🛿 jkato-test-feed | ine Helj |
| 🖿 FortiView | > | Name 📵 | jkato-hey1 | Туре | IP Address | |
| ↔ Network | > | Incoming Interface | m port1 | URI of external resource | https://s3.us-east-2.amazonaws.com/ | |
| System | > | Outgoing Interface | m port2 | Comments | AWS Guard Duty | |
| Policy & Objects | ~ | Source | 🛛 jkato-test- | feed X | | - |
| IPv4 Policy | ☆ | | | + | | |
| IPv4 DoS Policy | | Destination | 🔳 all | + | | |
| Addresses | | Schedule | o always | • | | |
| Wildcard FQDN Addresses | 5 | Service | | + |] | |
| Internet Service Database | | Action | ✓ ACCEPT | 🖉 DENY 🞓 LEARN | | |

Cleanup

Since test events and sample findings can update the ip_blocklist with sample IP addresses, it is highly recommended to clean up the ip_blocklist for production use. This cleanup step removes the ip_blocklist from the S3 bucket and clears the DynamoDB table.

- 1. Delete all records from the DynamoDB table. In this example, the DynamoDB table is my-aws-lambda-guarddutydb.
- 2. Delete the ip_blocklist file in the my-aws-lambda-guardduty bucket.

Pipelined automation using AWS Lambda

With automation stitches, you can decrease response times to security events by automating activities between different device components in the Security Fabric. You can monitor events from any source in the Security Fabric and set up

action responses to any destination.

FortiGate (both physical and virtual instances) supports AWS Lambda as an automated workflow.

- Creating an automation stitch on page 170
- Configuring an example automation stitch on page 171

Creating an automation stitch

- 1. In FortiOS, go to Security Fabric > Automation.
- 2. Under Action, select AWS Lambda.
- 3. In the Name field, enter the desired name for the stitch.
- 4. Under AWS Lambda, configure the following:
 - a. In the Name field, enter the name of the action.
 - **b.** For the *API Gateway* field, see the Lambda code configuration page, which shows the API gateway URL once added to the Lambda code.
 - c. For the API Key field, see the Lambda code configuration page as above.

| Designer | | |
|---|--|--|
| Add triggers Click on a trigger from the list below to add it to your function. | P | ikato-automation-FGT-lambda002 |
| API Gateway | API Gateway | X MS Lambda |
| AWS IOT | | |
| loudWatch Events | Add triggers from the list on the left | 🔔 Amazon CloudWatch |
| CloudWatch Logs | | |
| CodeCommit | | 👢 Amazon CloudWatch Logs |
| Cognito Sync Trigger | | Amazon EC2 |
| DynamoDB | | Amazon EC2 |
| Kinesis | | Amazon S3 |
| 53 | | |
| SNS | | Amazon SNS |
| SQS | | |
| | | Resources the function's role has access to will be shown here |
| API Gateway | | |
| kato-automation-FGT-lamb | da002-API 904:jqz90ouprb/*/*/jkato-automation-FGT-lambda002 | Enabled Delete |
| Details | | |
| API endpoint: https://jqz90 API key: zwKgoy53Vp700 | execute-api.us-east-2.amazonaws.com/default/jkato-a | tomation-FGT-lambda002 |
| Authorization: NONE Method: ANY | | |
| | | |

Ý

You must specify an AWS role that is sufficiently privileged to run the Lambda code and access CloudWatch/CloudWatch logs.

Configuring an example automation stitch

Let's try creating an example automation stitch with a simple pipeline. The example pipeline is as follows:

- 1. When an event log is created due to a successful login to the FortiGate,
- 2. Pick up one of the key-value pairs that the FortiGate sends to the API gateway
- 3. Invoke its AWS Lambda script, and, as an action, output the value on CloudWatch

Other actions you may want to configure include quarantining an EC2 instance by applying a different security group, renaming an EC2 tag, and so on. You can configure a variety of actions as fits your deployment scenario.

For this example, do the following:

- 1. Create an automation stitch by completing all steps in Creating an automation stitch.
- 2. Under Trigger, select Event Log.
- 3. In the Event dropdown list, select Admin Login Successful.



4. You will need to know what elements FortiGate sends with the event log and what to pick on the Lambda script. Now let's make the example event happen by logging into the FortiGate successfully as an admin user. Log out of the FortiGate, then log in again. You will see the corresponding event log.

5. Go to *Log* & *Report* > *System Events*. Find the desired event log.

| Dashboard | > | 3 ± 0 | Add Filter | | | | 🔟 - 🛄 D |
|--------------------------|-----|-----------|------------|---------------|---|--|---------------------|
| Security Fabric | > # | Date/Time | Level | User | Message | Log Details | Disk |
| FortiView | > 1 | 14:22:04 | | anto daemon | The IPv4 nto server. ntp1.fortiguard.com(208.91.112.50), is determined reachable at Wed Aug 29 14:22:04 201 | General | FortiCloud |
| Network | > 2 | 14:22:00 | | admin | Administrator admin logged in successfully from https(208.084088.1) | Date 08/29/20 | 18 Memory |
| System | , 3 | 14:21:48 | | admin 💧 | Forministrator women ogger out it om nittps(200.71.114.1) | Time 14:22:00 | |
| | > 4 | 14:18:56 | | 💧 ntp_daemon | The IPv4 ntp server, ntp1.fortiguard.com(208.91.112.50), is determined unreachable at Wed Aug 29 14:18:55 3 | Virtual Domain root | |
| | 5 | 14:16:03 | | antp_daemon | The IPv4 htp server, htp2.forfiguard.com(208.91.112.51), is determined reachable at Wed Aug 29.14:16:03.201 | Log Description Admin log | in successful |
| | > 6 | 14:13:33 | | admin 💧 | Administrator admin logged in successfully from https(208.91.114.1) | Source | |
| VPN | > 7 | 14:12:55 | | antp_daemon | The IPv4 ntp server, ntp2.fortiguard.com(208.91.112.51), is determined unreachable at Wed Aug 29 14:12:55 2 | IP 208.00000.1 | |
| User & Device | - | 14:10:09 | | | Fortigate scheduled update foni=yes fdni=yes fsci=yes mmdb(61.00819) from 173.243.138.78:443 | User 🍐 admin | |
| WiFi & Switch Controller | > | 14:10:08 | | http_daemon | The IPv4 ntp server, ntp1.fortiguard.com(208.91.112.50), is determined reachable at Wed Aug 29.14:10:09.201 | Destination | |
| Log & Report | | 14:09:13 | | | nterface port1 gets a DHCP lease. ip:10.10.1-12, maslc255.255.255.0, gateway:10.10.1.1, lease expires:Wed / u | IP 10.10.1.12 | |
| Forward Traffic | | 14:07:00 | | http_daemon | the IPv4 http server, http1.for uguard.com(208.91.112.50), is determined unreachable at Weil Aug 29.14:07:00 a | Action | |
| | | 14:04:08 | | ntp_daemon | The IPv4 htp server, htp2.forliguard.com(208.91.112.51), is determined reachable at Wed Aug 29.14:04:08.201 FortiSandbox AV database updated | Action login | |
| Local Traffic | | 14:02:44 | | A ntp daemon | | Status success | |
| Sniffer Traffic | | 13:58:14 | | a ntp_daemon | The IF v4 mp server, mp2:00 bgaard.com(208.91.112.50), is determined unreachable at Wed Aug 29 18:51:00 B The IF v4 mp server, mp1.fortiguard.com(208.91.112.50), is determined reachable at Wed Aug 29 13:58:13 201 | Reason none | |
| System Events | | 13:55:05 | | a ntp_daemon | The IPv4 htp server, htp://or bigustocom/208.91.112.50), is determined incentable at Web Aug 29 10:50:19 201. | Security | |
| Router Events | _ | 13:52:44 | | a nip_aucinon | -ortiSandibox AV database updated | Level | |
| VPN Events | | 13:52:13 | | a ntp daemon | The IPv4 htp server, htp2.fortiguard.com(208.91.112.51), is determined reachable at Wed Aug 29.13:52:13.201 | | |
| | | 13:49:05 | | | The IPv4 htp server, htp2.fortiguard.com(208.91.112.51), is determined unreachable at Wed Aug 29 13:49:05 | Event | |
| User Events | 20 | 13:46:19 | | antp_daemon | The IPv4 htp server, htp1.fortiguard.com(208.91.112.50), is determined reachable at Wed Aug 29 13:46:18 201 | Profile Name super_admi | |
| Endpoint Events | 21 | 13:43:10 | | antp_daemon | The IPv4 ntp server, ntp1.fortiguard.com(208.91.112.50), is determined unreachable at Wed Aug 29 13:43:10 2 | User Interface https(208.1 Message Administration | tor admin logged in |
| HA Events | 22 | 13:40:18 | | a ntp_daemon | The IPv4 ntp server, ntp2.fortiguard.com(208.91.112.51), is determined reachable of Wed Aug 29.13:40:18.201 | | from https(208. |
| Security Rating Events | 23 | 13:39:13 | | | nterface port 1 gets a DHCP lease, ip:10:10.1.12, mask:255.255.255.0, gateway:10.10.1.1, lease expires:Wed / u | Other | |
| WAN Opt. & Cache Events | 24 | 13:37:09 | | antp_daemon | The IPv4 ntp server, ntp2.fortiguerd.com(208.91.112.51), is determined unreachable at Wed Aug 29 13:37:10 👌 | Log event original timestam | 1525577720 |
| WiFi Events | _ + | 1 | | | • | Method | https |

6. Download the log as a file. You can filter logs as shown below.

| C | 🗢 📥 🗴 Message: Administrator admin logged in successfully from https:(208.91.114.1) OR NOT 💿 Add Filter 🔭 🗰 - 🛄 Deta | | | | | | | | |
|---|--|-------|---------|---|------------------------|--|--|--|--|
| # | Download Log | Level | User | Message | Log Description | | | | |
| 1 | 6 minutes ago | | 着 admin | Administrator admin logged in successfully from https(208.5111.1) | Admin login successful | | | | |
| 2 | 48 minutes ago | | admin 🚨 | Administrator admin logged in successfully from https(208. | Admin login successful | | | | |
| 3 | Wednesday | | 👗 admin | Administrator admin logged in successfully from https(208./ 1111.1) | Admin login successful | | | | |

7. Open the SystemEventLog-disk-<date/time/number>.log file in a text editor. It should look as below.

```
date=2018-08-29 time=15:56:13 logid="0100032001" type="event" subtype="system"
    level="information" vd="root" eventtime=1535583373 logdesc="Admin login successful"
    sn="15355xyz73" user="admin" ui="https(208.xx.yy.1)" method="https"
    srcip=208.xx.yy.1 dstip=192.168.1.15 action="login" status="success" reason="none"
    profile="super_admin" msg="Administrator admin logged in successfully from https
    (208.xx.yy.1)"
```

You have a rough idea about what elements can be picked. Raw JSON data will look as follows:

```
{ email: 'your email@xyz.com',
  data:
     { stitch: 'Your Stitch Name',
     actions: [ [Object] ],
     eventtype: 'logid',
     sn: 'Serial Number of your FortiGate',
     time: 1535587464,
     rawlog:
        { date: '2018-08-29',
        time: '17:04:24',
       logid: '0100032001',
        type: 'event',
        subtype: 'system',
        level: 'information',
        vd: 'root',
        eventtime: '1535587464',
        logdesc: 'Admin login successful',
        sn: 'xyz',
        user: 'admin',
        ui: 'https(FortiGate IP address)',
        method: 'https',
        srcip: 'FortiGate IP address',
```

- 8. You can pick available key-value pairs in your AWS Lambda code. In this particular event log, useful keys include stitch / date /time / vd / logdesc / user / ui / method / srcip / dstip / action / status / profile / msg.
- 9. You can see all JSON logs sent by FortiGate on CloudWatch Log by entering the following line in the Lambda code: console.log(JSON.parse(event.body));

```
10. Now, as an example, let's pick user: 'admin' and srcip: '208.xx.yy.1'. Here is the Lambda script:
    'use strict';
    var AWS = require('aws-sdk');
```

```
exports.handler = function(event, context, callback) {
   let body = JSON.parse(event.body);
   var usr = body.data.rawlog.user;
   var sourceip = body.data.rawlog.srcip;
   // Write your automation scripts below
   // .... Actions ....
   console.log('Hello My Friend, ', usr, '@', sourceip, '!');
   callback();
```

```
};
```

This is what the Lambda script will look like:

| WS Lambda 🛛 🗙 | JKatt | D-a Throttle |)ualifie | Actions V Select | tt a test event Test | <u> </u> | Save |
|---------------|-------------|--|--|---|-----------------------------|------------|------|
| ashboard | Code | entry type | Ru | untime | Handler Info | | |
| unctions | Edit | t code inline 🛛 🔻 | | Node.js 6.10 🔻 | index.handler | | |
| | - | File Edit Find View Go | to Too | ls Window | | К Я К Я | ¢ |
| | Environment | v ikato-automation-FGT ∦mb € index.js | 1 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 7 8 9 9 10 11 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 9 9 | <pre>index.js x + /* Author: xyz */ 'use strict'; var AWS = require('aws-sdk'); exports.handler = function(event, let body = JSON.parse(event.t var usr = body.data.rawlog.us var sourceip = body.data.rawl // Write your automation scri // Actions console.log('Hello My Friend, callback(); };</pre> | oody); eer; og.srcip; | | |

- 11. Save the script.
- **12.** Log out of the FortiGate, then log in again as an administrator. This triggers the event log. The Lambda code is invoked, and CloudWatch Log shows something like the following:

| aws | Services | ∽ Res | ource Groups | • 🌔 EC | 2 🌐 VPC | 🌓 Lambda | 👢 Clo | o \$€ . | ф жа | | Ohio | → 5 | Support | • |
|----------------------|----------|---------------------------|-------------------|----------------|------------------|----------------------|------------|--------------|----------------|-----------|----------|------------|----------|---------|
| CloudWatch | | CloudWatch | > Log Groups | > /aws/lamb | da/jkato-automa | tion-FGT-lambda00 | 2 > 2018 | 8/08/30/[\$l | _ATEST]b56c | 44cb561 | 44eb6b | 72fb1c1 | 5f60c5 | 9f |
| Dashboards Alarms | • | | | | | | | Expan | dall 🔵 F | Row C | Text | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| ALARM | | Filter eve | ents | | | | | | | all | 2018-0 |)8-29 ((| 02:02:41 | () - |
| OK | | Time | e (UTC +00:00) | Message | • | | | | | | | | | |
| Billing | | 2018 | -08-30 | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Events | | | | | No old | er events found at t | the momen | t. Retry. | | | | | | |
| Rules | | 02:02 | 2:41 | START R | equestId: c6982 | 9c2-abf8-11e8-80a | c-9520374 | 62318 Ver | sion: \$LATES | т | | | | |
| Event Buses | | ▼ 02:02 | 2:41 | 2018-08- | 30T02:02:41.178 | Z c69829c2-abf8-1 | 1e8-80ac- | 95203746 | 2318 Hello M | y Friend | admin (| @ 208.0 | 000000.1 | 1 |
| Logs | | 2018-08-30 | 0T02:02:41.178Z c | 69829c2-abf8-1 | 1e8-80ac-9520374 | 462310 Hello My Fr | iend, admi | n @ 208.01 | 10.11 | | | | | |
| Metrics | | ▶ 02:02 | 2:41 | END Rec | uestld: c69829c | 2-abf8-11e8-80ac-9 | 952037462 | 318 | | | | | | |
| | | ▶ 02:02 | 2:41 | REPORT | RequestId: c698 | 329c2-abf8-11e8-8 | Dac-952037 | 7462318 D | ouration: 39.1 | 8 ms Bill | ed Durat | ion: 10 | 0 ms Me | emory (|
| Favorites | | | | | No new | er events found at | the momer | nt. Retry. | | | | | | |

Configuring FortiGate-VM load balancer using dynamic address objects

FortiOS supports using dynamic firewall addresses in real servers under a virtual server load balancing configuration. Combined with support for the autoscaling group filter (see AWS SDN connector using certificates, this enables you to use the FortiGate as a load balancer in AWS for an autoscaling deployment. You do not need to manually change each server's IP address whenever a scale in/out action occurs, as FortiOS dynamically updates the IP addresses following each scale in/out action.

Consider a scenario where the FortiGate-VM is deployed on AWS and load balancing for three servers. The SDN connector configured in FortiOS dynamically loads the server IP addresses. If a scale in action occurs, the load balancer dynamically updates to load balance to the two remaining servers.

The following instructions assume the following:

- 1. An AWS SDN connector is configured and up.
- 2. An AWS dynamic firewall address with a filter is configured.

To configure a dynamic address object in a real server under virtual server load balance:

CLI commands introduced in FortiOS 6.4 are shown bolded below.

```
config firewall vip
edit "0"
set id 0
set uuid 0949dfbe-7512-51ea-4671-d3a706b09657
set comment ''
set type server-load-balance
set extip 0.0.0
set extintf "port1"
set arp-reply enable
set server-type http
set nat-source-vip disable
set gratuitous-arp-interval 0
set http-ip-header disable
set color 0
set ldb-method static
```

```
set http-redirect disable
     set persistence none
     set extport 80
     config realservers
        edit 1
          set type address
          set address "aws addresses"
          set port 8080
          set status active
          set holddown-interval 300
          set healthcheck vip
          set max-connections 0
          unset client-ip
        next.
     end
     set http-multiplex disable
     set max-embryonic-connections 1000
  next
end
```

Accessing a cloud server using an SDN connector via VPN



This guide provides a sample configuration that allows a local client PC to access an FTP server deployed inside the AWS cloud by using an AWS SDN connector via SSL VPN.

In this topology, a FortiGate-VM for AWS is deployed inside the AWS cloud. The FortiGate-VM can dynamically resolve the FTP server's private IP address in the AWS cloud through an AWS SDN connector. A local client PC with FortiClient installed can establish an SSL VPN tunnel to the FortiGate-VM inside the AWS cloud, then access the FTP server through the SSL VPN tunnel.

To configure the FortiGate-VM:

- 1. Configure the AWS SDN connector:
 - a. In FortiOS, go to Security Fabric > Fabric Connectors.
 - **b.** Click Create New.
 - c. Select Amazon Web Services (AWS).
 - d. In the AWS region name field, enter us-east-1.
 - e. Leave the AWS VPC ID field blank if no VPC ID is specified.
 - f. Configure other fields as required. Click OK.

g. Go to Security Fabric > Fabric Connectors. Click the refresh icon for the configured connector. The green arrow means that the connector is connected.



- 2. Create an SDN connector firewall address to associate the configured SDN connector:
 - **a.** Go to Policy & Objects > Addresses.
 - b. Click Create New, then select Address.
 - c. From the Type dropdown list, select Fabric Connector Address.
 - d. From the SDN Connector dropdown list, select the connector created in step 1.
 - e. For SDN address type, select Private.
 - f. In the Filter field, enter Tag.Name=publicftp. This is the name of the FTP server in the AWS cloud.
 - g. From the Interface dropdown list, select any.
 - h. Click OK. The following shows the FTP server as seen in the AWS management console.

| Name - | Instance ID 🔹 | Instanc - | Availabili - | Instance 57 | Status Checks - | IPv4 Public IF- | Private IP Address | • |
|-----------|---------------------|-----------|--------------|-------------|-------------------|-----------------|--------------------|---|
| publicftp | i-0fe5a1ef16bb94796 | t2.micro | us-east-1c | 🔵 running | 2/2 checks passed | 54.210.36.196 | 172.31.31.101 | |

- 3. After the update interval (60 seconds by default), check the resolved firewall address:
 - a. Go to Policy & Objects > Addresses.
 - **b.** Hover over the address created in step 2. In this example, it shows the firewall address (172.31.31.101) that the configured SDN connector resolves to.



- 4. Configure SSL VPN to access the FTP server:
 - **a.** Configure the user and user group:
 - i. Go to User & Device > User Definition.
 - ii. Create a new local user.
 - iii. Go to User & Device > User Groups.
 - iv. Create a group that includes the new local user.
 - b. Configure SSL VPN settings:
 - i. Go to VPN > SSL-VPN Settings.
 - ii. In the Listen on Interface field, select the proper interface. This example selects port1.
 - iii. In the Listen on Port field, enter 10443.
 - iv. From the Server Certificate dropdown list, select the desired certificate.

Self-signed certificates are provided by default to simplify initial installation and testing. It is **HIGHLY** recommended that you acquire a signed certificate for your installation.



Continuing to use these certificates can result in your connection being compromised, allowing attackers to steal your information, such as credit card details.

For more information, please review Use a non-factory SSL certificate for the SSL VPN portal and learn how to Purchase and import a signed SSL certificate.

- v. Under Authentication/Port Mapping, set the default full-access portal for All Other Users/Groups.
- vi. Create a new authentication/portal mapping for the group created in step a, mapping to the full-access portal.
- **c.** Configure the SSL VPN firewall policy:
 - i. Go to Policy & Objects > IPv4 Policy.
 - ii. From the Incoming Interface dropdown list, select the SSL VPN tunnel interface (ssl.root).
 - iii. From the Outgoing Interface dropdown list, select port1.
 - iv. In the Source field, select all and the group configured in step a.
 - **v.** In the *Destination* field, select the address created in step 2.
 - vi. From the Schedule dropdown list, select always.
 - vii. In the Service field, select ALL.
 - viii. For Action, select Accept.
 - ix. Click OK.

To establish an SSL VPN connection from the local client PC:

This example assumes that you are not using EMS to manage endpoints. If you are using EMS, use a licensed FortiClient endpoint for the following configuration, skipping the installation step.

- 1. Download VPN-only FortiClient from FortiClient.com. Install onto the local client PC.
- 2. In FortiClient, on the Remote Access tab, add a new connection.
- 3. For VPN, select SSL-VPN.
- 4. In the *Remote Gateway* field, enter the IP address of the listening FortiGate interface. In this example, it is 100.26.32.219, the FortiGate-VM port1 public IP address.
- 5. Select Customize port, then enter 10443.
- **6.** Save the configuration.
- 7. Use the credentials configured in step 4a above to connect to the SSL VPN tunnel. After connection, traffic to the SDN connector resolved IP address (172.31.31.101) goes through the tunnel. Other traffic goes through the local gateway. The client PC side shows the routing entry for the SSL VPN tunnel:

| Destination | Gateway | Genmask | Flags | Metric | Ref | Use | Iface |
|---------------|----------------|-----------------|-------|--------|-----|-----|-------|
| 0.0.0.0 | 172.16.200.1 | 0.0.0.0 | UG | 0 | 0 | 0 | eth1 |
| 172.31.31.101 | 10.212.134.200 | 255.255.255.255 | UGH | 0 | 0 | 0 | ppp0 |

The FortiGate-VM shows the logged in user and the assigned SSL VPN tunnel virtual IP address.

| FortiGate VM64-A | WS FGT-AWS-3 | | | | >_ [] @ |) - 🗘 😰 💽 admin - | | |
|-----------------------|----------------------------|------------------------------|------------------|-----------------|------------------------|-------------------|---------------|-------|
| | ● > [*] 2 Refresh | | | | FGT-AWS-3 | • | | |
| FortiView Network | > T Usernar | ne 🗘 🛛 🝸 | Last Login 🗘 👘 | r Remote Host ≑ | T Active Con | nections | | |
| + Network | usera | 2019/04/04 15:4 | 12:22 208.91.115 | .10 | Tunnel: 10.212.134.200 | | | |
| | SSL VPN Index | sslvpn l Login Us User | | Timeo | ut | From | HTTP in/out | HTTPS |
| in/ | out | | | | | | | |
| | 0 | usera | 1(1) | 284 | 208 | 8.91.115 | .10 0/0 | 0/0 |
| | SSL VPN | sessions | : | | | | | |
| | Index | User | Source IP | Dur | ation I | :/O Byte | s Tunnel/Dest | IP |
| | 0 | usera | 208.91.11 | 5.10 7 | 6 18 | 883/1728 | 10.212.134.2 | 00 |

To run diagnose commands:

1. To show SDN connector status, run the diagnose sys sdn status command. The output should be as follows:

 SDN Connector
 Type
 Status

 aws1
 aws
 connected

2. To debug the SDN connector to resolve the firewall address, run the diagnose debug application awsd -1 command. The output should be as follows:

```
...
awsd checking firewall address object dynamic-aws, vd 0
address change, new ip list:
172.31.31.101
awsd sdn connector aws1 finish updating IP addresses
...
```

3. To restart the AWS SDN connector daemon, run the diagnose test application awsd 99 command.

VPN for FortiGate-VM on AWS

Connecting a local FortiGate to an AWS VPC VPN

This recipe provides sample configuration of a site-to-site VPN connection from a local FortiGate to an AWS VPC VPN via IPsec with static routing.

Instances that you launch into an Amazon VPC can communicate with your own remote network via a site-to-site VPN between your on-premise FortiGate and AWS VPC VPN. You can enable access to your remote network from your VPC by configuring a virtual private gateway (VPG) and customer gateway to the VPC, then configuring the site-to-site VPC VPN.

The following prerequisites must be met for this configuration:

- An AWS VPC with some configured subnets, routing tables, security group rules, and so on
- An on-premise FortiGate with an external IP address

This recipe consists of the following steps:

- 1. Create a VPG.
- 2. Create a customer gateway.
- 3. Create a site-to-site VPN connection on AWS.
- 4. Configure the on-premise FortiGate.

To create a VPG:

A VPG is the VPN concentrator on the Amazon side of the site-to-site VPN connection. You can create a VPG and attach it to the VPC from which you want to create the site-to-site VPN connection.

- 1. In the AWS management console, go to Virtual Private Gateways, then click Create Virtual Private Gateway.
- 2. In the Name tag field, enter the desired gateway name.
- **3.** For static route configuration, the ASN is not important, as the ASN is for BGP routing. By default, the VPG is created with the default ASN, 64512. You cannot change the ASN once the VPG has been created.
- 4. After creating the VPG, select it from the list of VPGs, and click Actions > Attach to VPC.
- 5. On the Attach to VPC page, select the ID for the desired VPC from the VPC dropdown list.

To create a customer gateway:

In this example, the customer gateway refers to the on-premise FortiGate for the VPC VPN to connect to.

- 1. Go to Customer Gateways, then click Create Customer Gateway.
- 2. In the *Name* field, enter the desired gateway name.
- 3. For Routing, select Static.
- 4. In the IP Address field, enter the on-premise FortiGate's external address.

To create a site-to-site VPN connection on AWS:

AWS VPC VPN supports the following:

- Internet Key Exchange version 2 (IKEv2)
- NAT traversal
- Four-byte ASN (in addition to two-byte ASN)
- · Reusable IP addresses for customer gateways
- Additional encryption options including AES 256-bit encryption, SHA-2 hashing, and additional Diffie-Hellman groups
- Configurable tunnel options
- Custom private ASN for the Amazon side of a BGP session

This example describes creating an IPsec site-to-site VPN.

- **1.** Go to VPN Connections, then click Create VPN Connection.
- 2. In the Name tag field, enter the desired VPN connection name.
- 3. From the Virtual Private Gateway dropdown list, select the VPG ID for the VPG created earlier.
- 4. For Routing Options, select Static.
- 5. In the IP Prefixes field, enter the CIDR of the networks behind your on-premise FortiGate.
- 6. Leave the tunnel options blank. You will obtain this information from a configuration file download.

To configure the on-premise FortiGate:

- 1. After creating the VPN, select it in the VPN list, then click *Download Configuration*. This document contains information needed to configure the FortiGate correctly.
- 2. You can configure the FortiGate using this downloaded configuration file. The example FortiGate has port1 with an external IP address of 35.188.119.246 and an internal IP address of 10.6.30.2/24. Port2 has an internal IP address of 10.1.100.3/24. The downloaded configuration file resembles the following. The most important information here is the remote-gw value, which in this case is 3.95.86.157, and the psksecret value.

```
IEEsc Tunnel #1
iii Internet Key Exchange (IKE) Configuration
i A policy is established for the supported ISAR9P encryption,
authentication, Difficient Feellman, lifetime, and key parameters.
I Please note, these sample configurations are for the minimum requirement of AES126, SHA2, and DH Group 2.
Category "VPN" connections in the GovCloud region have a minimum requirement of AES256, SHA256, or other DH groups like 2, 14-18, 22, 23, and 24.
I you will need to modify these sample configuration for VPNs of category "VPN," and not for "VPN-Classic".
The address of the extremal interface for your customer gateway must be a static address.
Your customer gateway may regide behind a device performing network address translation (NAT).
To ensure that NAT traversal (NAT-T) can function, you must adjust your firewall rules to unblock UDP port 4500. If not behind NAT, we recommend disabling NAT-T.
Config urp ipsec phasel-interface
edit vpn-0320376a39696915b-0 ! Name must be shorter than 15 chars, best if shorter than 12
set interface "wan."
The If the ensure a Security Association remains operational
set dpd enable
set local pest-basel
set way iffe 2800
set moder ys 5.180.119.246
set dpd-neble
set dpd-neble
set dpd-neble
set dpd-netryinterval 10
here a set the set of the Security Association frequency for the set of the set o
```

Run the following commands in the FortiOS CLI to configure the FortiGate, using the remote-gw and psksecret values from the downloaded configuration file as shown below. When setting the destination for the static route, use the VPC's IPv4 CIDR:

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
edit "examplephase1"
   set interface "port1"
   set keylife 28800
   set peertype any
```
```
set proposal aes128-shal
     set dhgrp 2
     set remote-gw 3.95.86.157
     set psksecret NlITFTQJfiVuRWkQui A5IjNT 41VTtP
     set dpd-retryinterval 10
  next
end
config vpn ipsec phase2-interface
  edit "examplephase2"
     set phase1name "examplephase1"
     set proposal aes128-shal
     set dhgrp 2
     set keylifeseconds 3600
  next
end
config router static
  edit 1
     set dst 10.0.0.0 255.255.0.0
     set device "examplephase1"
  next
end
config firewall policy
  edit 1
     set srcintf "examplephase1"
     set dstintf "port2"
     set srcaddr "all"
     set dstaddr "all"
     set action accept
     set schedule "always"
     set service "ALL"
  next
  edit 2
     set srcintf "port2"
     set dstintf "examplephase1"
     set srcaddr "all"
     set dstaddr "all"
     set action accept
     set schedule "always"
     set service "ALL"
  next
end
```

- 3. Run the diagnose vpn tunnel up examplephase2 command if the tunnel is not up automatically already.
- 4. Check in the FortiOS GUI in VPN > IPsec Tunnels that the tunnel is up.



5. In the AWS management console, check that the tunnel is up:

| a ana | /PN vp | on-032037fa39969e15b | available | vgw-0091a6183232e9ff3 wikivpg |
|---------------------|----------------|------------------------------------|--------------|---|
| PN Conn | ection: vpn-03 | 2037fa39969e15b | | |
| Details | Tunnel Deta | ills Static Routes | Tags | |
| | | | | |
| Outside | IP Address | Inside IP CIDR | Status | Status Last Changed |
| Outside 3.95.86. | IP Address | Inside IP CIDR 169.254.45.88/30 | Status UP | Status Last Changed February 15, 2019 at 6:11:14 PM UT |

- 6. After the tunnel is up, you must edit a custom route table and security group rules to achieve connectivity between a resource behind the FortiGate to a resource on the AWS cloud.
- 7. On AWS, there are two tunnels for each created VPN. This example only shows connecting to one tunnel, but you can create the second tunnel in FortiOS as well. The second tunnel is for redundancy. If one tunnel goes down, the FortiGate can reach AWS resources using the other tunnel.

Connecting a local FortiGate to an AWS FortiGate via site-to-site VPN

This guide provides sample configuration of a site-to-site VPN connection from a local FortiGate to an AWS FortiGate via site-to-site IPsec VPN with static routing. You can access resources that are protected behind a FortiGate on AWS from your local environment by using a site-to-site VPN.

The following depicts the network topology for this sample deployment:



The following prerequisites must be met for this configuration:

- A FortiGate located on AWS with some resources behind it. In this example, the AWS FortiGate has port1 connected to WAN and port2 connected to local LAN.
- An on-premise FortiGate. For your local environment, determine if your FortiGate has a publicly accessible IP
 address or if it is behind NAT. In this example, the on-premise FortiGate is behind NAT.

This recipe consists of the following steps:

1. Create a VPN on the local FortiGate to the AWS FortiGate.

- 2. Create a VPN on the AWS FortiGate to the local FortiGate.
- 3. Establish a connection between the FortiGates.

To create a VPN on the local FortiGate to the AWS FortiGate:

- 1. In FortiOS on the local FortiGate, go to VPN > IPsec Wizard.
- 2. On the VPN Setup tab, configure the following:
 - a. In the Name field, enter the desired name.
 - b. For Template Type, select Site to Site.
 - c. For Remote Device Type, select FortiGate.
 - **d.** For *NAT Configuration*, select the appropriate option. In this example, since the local FortiGate is behind NAT, *This site is behind NAT* is selected. Click *Next*. For non-dialup situations where the local FortiGate has an external IP address, select *No NAT between sites*.
- 3. On the Authentication tab, configure the following:
 - a. For Remote Device, select IP Address.
 - b. In the IP Address field, enter the AWS FortiGate's elastic IP address. In this example, it is 3.95.141.75.
 - c. For Outgoing Interface, allow FortiOS to detect the interface via routing lookup.
 - d. For Authentication Method, select Pre-shared Key.
 - e. In the Pre-shared Key field, enter the desired key. Click Next.
- 4. On the Policy & Routing tab, configure the following:
 - **a.** For *Local Interface*, select the desired local interface. In this example, port2 is selected. The *Local Subnets* field should then auto-populate.
 - **b.** In the *Remote Subnets* field, enter the remote subnet on the other side of the AWS FortiGate. In this example, it is 172.31.199.0/24.
 - c. For Internet Access, select None.
- 5. Click Create. The IPsec Wizard creates the following:
 - a. Firewall addresses for local and remote subnets
 - b. Firewall address groups containing the above firewall addresses
 - c. phase-1 and phase-2 interfaces
 - d. Static route and blackhole route
 - e. Two firewall policies: one for traffic to the tunnel interface and one for traffic from the tunnel interface

To create a VPN on the AWS FortiGate to the local FortiGate:

- 1. In FortiOS on the AWS FortiGate, go to VPN > IPsec Wizard.
- 2. On the VPN Setup tab, configure the following:
 - a. In the Name field, enter the desired name.
 - b. For Template Type, select Site to Site.
 - c. For Remote Device Type, select FortiGate.
 - **d.** For *NAT Configuration*, select *This site is behind NAT*. This is the correct configuration since the AWS FortiGate has an elastic IP address. Click *Next*.
- 3. On the Authentication tab, configure the following:
 - a. For Incoming Interface, select the WAN-facing incoming interface. In this example, it is port1.
 - b. For Authentication Method, select Pre-shared Key.
 - c. In the Pre-shared Key field, enter the same key configured on the local FortiGate. Click Next.

- 4. On the Policy & Routing tab, configure the following:
 - **a.** For *Local Interface*, select the desired local interface. In this example, port2 is selected. The *Local Subnets* field should then auto-populate.
 - **b.** In the *Remote Subnets* field, enter the remote subnet on the other side of the local FortiGate. In this example, it is 10.1.100.0/24.
 - c. For Internet Access, select None.
- 5. Click Create. The IPsec Wizard creates the following:
 - a. Firewall addresses for local and remote subnets
 - b. Firewall address groups containing the above firewall addresses
 - c. phase-1 and phase-2 interfaces
 - d. Static route and blackhole route
 - e. Two firewall policies: one for traffic to the tunnel interface and one for traffic from the tunnel interface

To establish a connection between the FortiGates:

- 1. The tunnels are down until you initiate a connection from the local FortiGate to the AWS FortiGate. In FortiOS on the local FortiGate, go to *Monitor > IPsec Monitor*.
- 2. Right-click the phase-2 interface, and select Bring Up.
- 3. In FortiOS on the AWS FortiGate, go to *Monitor > IPsec Monitor* and verify that the connection is up.

| FortiGate VM64-AWS FGVM080000168945 | | | | | | | | | |
|-------------------------------------|---|-----------|----------------------|-----------------------|----------------------|-----------------|-----------------|-----------|----------------------|
| 🚯 Dashboard | > | C Refresh | Reset Statistics | 🕽 Bring Up 👻 🛛 😋 Brin | ng Down * | | | | |
| Security Fabric | > | Name 🗢 | Type \$ | Remote Gateway 🌲 | Peer ID \$ | Incoming Data 🗢 | Outgoing Data 🌲 | Phase 1 🗘 | Phase 2 Selectors \$ |
| FortiView | > | toLOCAL_1 | 🕄 Dialup - FortiGate | 208.91.114.1 | | 0 B | 0 B | toLOCAL | toLOCAL |



The elastic IP address can be considered as one to one to the FortiGate's IP address, even though the port IP address may be an internal IP address.

SD-WAN cloud on-ramp

See SD-WAN cloud on-ramp.

Security inspection with Gateway Load Balancer integration

The following deployment scenarios describe configuring security inspection with AWS Gateway Load Balancer (GWLB):

North-south security inspection to customer VPC



This guide assumes that the following are already created and in place as the diagram shows:

- Customer VPC
- Security VPC
- · FortiGate with at least one management network interface and elastic IP address assigned
- Application instances

The guide describes configuring additional network interfaces to handle data traffic. The following describes the two VPCs in this deployment:

| VPC | Description |
|----------|--|
| Customer | Where customer workloads are deployed. The customer VPC has four subnets (two in each availability zone (AZ)). Each AZ has an application-purposed subnet and a GWLB endpoint subnet: Application-purposed subnet: deploy application workloads where the |

| VPC | Description |
|----------|---|
| | FortiGate must inspect the traffic. GWLB endpoint subnet: deploy the GWLB endpoint so that traffic is redirected to the GWLB, which then redirects the traffic to the FortiGate for inspection. |
| Security | Where the FortiGate is deployed. You create the GWLB in this VPC. |

The following describes the traffic flow in this deployment:

| Traffic flow | Description |
|------------------|---|
| Inbound traffic | With this configuration, the FortiGate inspects traffic that is destined for the application instances. The Internet gateway in the customer VPC is associated with an ingress route table. The route table directs the traffic for the application subnets through the GWLB endpoints (GWLBe) in its dedicated subnets. The traffic then goes through the GWLB in the security VPC, where it is encapsulated with Geneve protocol and sent to the FortiGate. The FortiGate inspects the traffic and redirects it to the application instances. |
| Outbound traffic | The route tables that the application subnets are associated with have a default route through the GWLB endpoints in their AZ. The traffic originating from the application instances is forwarded to the FortiGate through the GWLB. After inspection, the FortiGate sends the traffic to the Internet. You set static routes for all of these traffic redirects after deployment. See Post-deployment configuration on page 189. |

Creating the GWLB and registering targets

To create the GWLB and register targets:

- 1. Go to Compute > EC2 Dashboard > Load Balancing > Load Balancers.
- 2. Click Create Load Balancer, then Gateway Load Balancer.
- 3. Configure the GWLB:
 - a. From the IP address type dropdown list, select ipv4.
 - **b.** From the VPC dropdown list, select the security VPC, where the FortiGate is deployed.
 - c. From the Availability Zones dropdown list, select the AZ and subnet where the FortiGate is deployed. This example selects the private subnet where the FortiGate port2 is mapped to. In this example, you can enable multiple VDOMs (only available on BYOL instances) or split-task VDOMs (available on BYOL and on-demand instances), and port2 is mapped to the traffic-handling VDOM. You then create the Geneve interface on port2

to handle the traffic that has been redirected via the GWLB. See Post-deployment configuration on page 189

- 4. Configure routing:
 - **a.** From the *Target group* dropdown list, create a new target group with the desired name.
 - b. For Target type, select IP.
 - c. Ensure that Protocol:Port displays as GENEVE: 6081.
 - d. From the Protocol dropdown list, select HTTPS.
 - e. From the *Port* dropdown list, select the desired port. This example uses port 443. Ensure that your security group configuration allows traffic on that port.
- 5. Register the targets:
 - a. In the IP field, enter the FortiGate IP address. In this example, you would enter the FortiGate port2 IP address.
 - **b.** Click Add to list, then Next.
 - c. Click Review and Create.
- 6. Ensure that cross-zone LB is enabled:
 - a. Go to Compute > EC2 Dashboard > Load Balancing > Load Balancers.
 - **b.** Select the newly created LB.
 - c. On the Description tab, ensure that cross-zone LB is enabled.

Creating the LB endpoint

The LB endpoint is a listener that forwards traffic from the customer VPC to the GWLB and subsequently to the target group that you created in Creating the GWLB and registering targets on page 187. Before you create the LB endpoint, you must deploy an endpoint service in the region where your endpoint will be.

To create an endpoint service:

- 1. Go to VPC Dashboard > Virtual Private Cloud > Endpoint services.
- 2. Click Create Endpoint Service.
- 3. For Associate Load Balancers, select the GWLB that you created in Creating the GWLB and registering targets on page 187.
- 4. Enable endpoint acceptance if desired. This example does not require it.
- 5. Click Create service.

To create the LB endpoint:

- 1. Go to VPC Dashboard > Virtual Private Cloud > Endpoint Services.
- 2. Select the newly created endpoint service.
- 3. Copy the service name of the service on the *Details* tab.
- **4.** Go to VPC Dashboard > Virtual Private Cloud > Endpoints.

- 5. Create the endpoint:
 - a. Click Create Endpoint.
 - b. For Service category, select Find service by name.
 - c. In the Service Name field, paste the service name that you copied in step 1.
 - d. Click Verify.
 - e. From the VPC dropdown list, select the VPC where you need to deploy the endpoint.
 - f. From the Subnets dropdown list, select the subnet where you need to deploy the endpoint.
 - g. Click Create Endpoint.

VPC route tables

This example has two VPCs and multiple subnets within each VPC:

- Customer VPC (10.10.0.0/16): place protected resources whose traffic must be analyzed.
- Security VPC (10.90.0.0/16): place FortiGates here.

Application subnets are placed in different AZs.

Configure the ingress route table as follows:

- Subnet 1 (10.10.2.0/23) is mapped to the GWLB endpoint placed in AZ 1 subnet.
- Subnet 2 (10.10.4.0/23) is mapped to the GWLB endpoint placed in AZ 2 subnet.

| Route Table: rtb- | | | | |
|-------------------|---------------------------------------|------------------------|------------------------|------------|
| Summary Routes | Subnet Associations Edge Associations | Route Propagation Tags | | |
| Edit routes | | | | |
| | View All routes - | | | |
| Destination | | Target | Status | Propagated |
| 10.10.0/16 | | local | active | No |
| 10.10.2.0/23 | | vpce- Availability | Zone 1 - Subnet active | No |
| 10.10.4.0/23 | | vpce-Availability | Zone 2 - Subnet active | No |

• The Internet gateway is assigned on the route table *Edge Associations* tab. This allows traffic to flow into the VPC and then be redirected into their respective subnets via the routes that you created above.

Post-deployment configuration

You must create a Geneve interface on the FortiGate to handle traffic between the FortiGate and GWLB.

To create the Geneve interface:

- Go to EC2 Dashboard > Network & Security > Network Interfaces. Copy the Primary private IPv4 address value for the GWLB interface created in the security VPC.
- 2. This example creates separate VDOMs via the split VDOM feature to handle traffic from the application VPC. Enable probe response on port 2 on both FortiGate instances. This allows LB health check to function: config system global

```
config system interface
edit "port2"
set vdom "FG-traffic"
set alias private
set mode dhcp
```

```
set allowaccess ping https ssh fgfm probe-response
           set defaultgw disable
        next
      end
   end
3. Create Geneve interfaces:
   config vdom
     edit "FG-traffic"
        config system geneve
           edit "awsgeneve"
              set interface "port2"
              set type ppp
              set remote-ip <GWLB_interface_ip (from step 1)>
           next
        end
     next
```

end

4. Setting a higher priority on static routes for Geneve interfaces is recommended to avoid unintended functionality: config router static

```
edit 2
set priority 100
set device "awsgeneve"
next
end
```

5. In a scenario where the load balancer is in a different subnet than the FortiGate interface, configure the following static route to avoid health check failures:

```
config router static
  edit 3
    set device port2
    set dst <loadbal_subnet>
    set gateway <local_gateway>
  next
end
```

To configure egress routes:

If the current VDOM has multiple interfaces, you must add egress routes to ensure that traffic entering through the Geneve interfaces egress through the same interface.

```
config router policy
  edit 1
    set input-device "awsgeneve"
    set src "0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0"
    set dst "10.10.2.0/255.255.254.0"
    set output-device "awsgeneve"
    next
end
```

Validating the configuration

Since traffic between the Internet and the application EC2 instance flows through the FortiGate Geneve interface, this example creates a FortiOS firewall policy that allows communication from the Geneve interface to the Geneve interface. The following shows an example policy.



This policy facilitates easy debugging. You should not configure this policy in a production environment.

To configure the policy:

```
config firewall policy
 edit 1
    set name "test_policy"
    set srcintf "az2"
    set dstintf "az2"
    set srcaddr "all"
    set dstaddr "all"
    set action accept
    set schedule "always"
    set service "ALL"
    next
end
```

To run a packet sniffer on the Geneve interface created to handle GWLB traffic:

In this example, the VDOM name is FG-traffic. When multiple VDOM mode (available only on BYOL instances) is enabled, substitute the name of your VDOM here for FG-traffic.

1. Run a packet sniffer:

```
config vdom
edit FG-traffic
diagnose sniffer packet awsgeneve
```

2. While the packet capture is running, attempt to access/ping a resource in the application subnet (protected subnet). The ping should succeed. The following shows the FortiGate packet capture for this access attempt:



3. While the packet capture is running, attempt to access/ping an Internet resource from the protected resource. The

ping should succeed. The following shows the FortiGate packet capture for this access attempt:

| FGVM04 (vdom) # edit FG-traffic current vf=FG-traffic:3 |
|--|
| FGVM04 (Formation (FG-traffic) # diag sniffer packet awsgeneve Using Original Sniffing Mode interfaces=[awsgeneve] filters=[none] |
| riiters=[none] pcap lookupnet: awsgeneve: no IPv4 address assigned |
| 6.246479 173.180.116.40.56015 -> 10.10.3.30.22: psh 3989997602 ack 3873790126 |
| 6.246504 173.180.116.40.56015 -> 10.10.3.30.22: psh 3989997602 ack 3873790126 |
| 6.247445 10.10.3.30.22 -> 173.180.116.40.56015: ack 3989997650 |
| 6.247458 10.10.3.30.22 -> 173.180.116.40.56015: ack 3989997650 |
| 6.247463 10.10.3.30.22 -> 173.180.116.40.56015: psh 3873790126 ack 3989997650 |
| 6.247465 10.10.3.30.22 -> 173.180.116.40.56015: psh 3873790126 ack 3989997650 |
| 6.315274 173.180.116.40.56015 -> 10.10.3.30.22: ack 3873790174 |
| 6.315303 173.180.116.40.56015 -> 10.10.3.30.22: ack 3873790174 |
| 6.372304 173.180.116.40.56015 -> 10.10.3.30.22: psh 3989997650 ack 3873790174 |
| 6.372314 173.180.116.40.56015 -> 10.10.3.30.22: psh 3989997650 ack 3873790174 |
| |

East-west security inspection between two customer VPCs

The following shows the topology for this deployment, which uses GWLB for east-west security inspection between two customer VPCs:



This guide assumes that the following are already created and in place as the diagram shows:

- Customer A and B VPCs
- Security VPC
- · FortiGate with at least one management network interface and elastic IP address assigned
- Application instances

The guide describes configuring additional network interfaces to handle data traffic. The following describes the two VPC types in this deployment:

| VPC | Description |
|----------|---|
| Customer | Where customer workloads are deployed. The customer VPCs each have one AZ with an application-purposed subnet where you deploy application workloads where the FortiGate must inspect the traffic. |
| Security | Where the FortiGate is deployed. You create the GWLB in this VPC. The security VPC AZ also includes the following subnets: GWLB endpoint subnet: deploy the GWLB endpoint so that traffic is redirected to the GWLB, which then redirects the traffic to the FortiGate for inspection. TGW subnet: deploy the transit gateway (TGW) and associated resources, which allows connection of the customer VPCs to the security VPC. |

Creating the GWLB and registering targets

For this deployment, you create the GWLB in the security subnet.

To create the GWLB and register targets:

- 1. Go to Compute > EC2 Dashboard > Load Balancing > Load Balancers.
- 2. Click Create Load Balancer, then Gateway Load Balancer.
- 3. Configure the GWLB:
 - a. From the IP address type dropdown list, select ipv4.
 - b. From the VPC dropdown list, select the security VPC, where the FortiGate is deployed.
 - c. From the Availability Zones dropdown list, select the AZ and subnet where the FortiGate is deployed. This example selects the private subnets for the respective AZs where the FortiGate port2 is mapped to. In this example, you can enable multiple VDOMs (only available on BYOL instances) or split-task VDOMs (available on BYOL and on-demand instances), and port2 is mapped to the traffic-handling VDOM. You then create the Geneve interface on port2 to handle the traffic that has been redirected via the GWLB. See Post-deployment configuration on page 196.

| Step | 1: | Configure | Load | Balancer |
|------|----|-----------|------|----------|
|------|----|-----------|------|----------|

| Basic Configu | ration | |
|--------------------------|----------|---|
| To configure your Gate | way Loa | d Balancer, provide a name and confirm your VPC and subnet selections. This type of load balancer consists of an IP listener that receives all connection requests |
| Name | (i) | gwlb-tgw-demo |
| IP address type | i | ipv4 |
| | | |
| Availability Zo | nes | |
| Specify the Availability | Zones to | enable for your load balancer. The load balancer routes traffic to the targets in these Availability Zones only. You can specify only one subnet per Availability Zone. |
| VPC | i | vpc- (10.90.0.0/16) security-vpc-01 |
| Availability Zo | nes | us-west-2a subnet-(|
| | | subnet-time (sec-sub-PRIVATE-AZ2 |

- 4. Configure routing:
 - **a.** From the *Target group* dropdown list, create a new target group with the desired name.
 - b. For Target type, select IP.
 - c. Ensure that Protocol:Port displays as GENEVE: 6081.
 - d. From the Protocol dropdown list, select HTTPS.

- **e.** From the *Port* dropdown list, select the desired port. This example uses port 443. Ensure that your security group configuration allows traffic on that port.
- 5. Register the targets:
 - a. In the IP field, enter the FortiGate IP address. In this example, you would enter the FortiGate port2 IP address.
 - b. Click Add to list, then Next.
 - c. Click Review and Create.
- 6. Ensure that cross-zone LB is enabled:
 - a. Go to Compute > EC2 Dashboard > Load Balancing > Load Balancers.
 - **b.** Select the newly created LB.
 - c. On the *Description* tab, ensure that cross-zone LB is enabled.

Creating the LB endpoint

The LB endpoint is a listener that forwards traffic from the customer VPC to the GWLB and subsequently to the target group that you created in Creating the GWLB and registering targets on page 193. You must create an endpoint for each AZ. Before you create the LB endpoint, you must deploy an endpoint service in the region where your endpoint will be.

To create an endpoint service:

- 1. Go to VPC Dashboard > Virtual Private Cloud > Endpoint services.
- 2. Click Create Endpoint Service.
- 3. For Associate Load Balancers, select the GWLB that you created in Creating the GWLB and registering targets on page 193.
- 4. Enable endpoint acceptance if desired. This example does not require it.
- 5. Click Create service.

To create the LB endpoint:

- 1. Go to VPC Dashboard > Virtual Private Cloud > Endpoint Services.
- 2. Select the newly created endpoint service.
- 3. Copy the service name of the service on the Details tab.
- 4. Create the endpoint for the first AZ:
 - **a.** Go to VPC Dashboard > Virtual Private Cloud > Endpoints.
 - b. Click Create Endpoint.
 - c. For Service category, select Find service by name.
 - d. In the Service Name field, paste the service name that you copied in step 1.
 - e. Click Verify.
 - f. From the VPC dropdown list, select the VPC where you need to deploy the endpoint.
 - **g.** From the *Subnets* dropdown list, select the subnet where you need to deploy the endpoint. This example selects the GWLB endpoint subnet created in each AZ in the security subnet.
 - h. Click Create Endpoint.
- 5. Repeat the process to create the endpoint for the second AZ.

Creating the transit gateway

A transit gateway (TGW) is a transit hub used to connect two VPCs or a VPC to an on-premise network. This example connects the application VPC to the security VPC via a TGW. This ensures that any access to and from the application VPC is routed via the security VPC, where the FortiGates can inspect it.

To create the TGW:

- 1. Go to VPC Dashboard > Transit Gateways > Transit Gateways.
- 2. Click Create Transit Gateway.
- Configure the TGW as needed. Creating a TGW creates a TGW default route table. The table is used as the default
 association and propagation route table for this gateway. You can access this table in VPC Dashboard > Transit
 Gateways > Transit Gateway Route Tables.

To create the TGW attachment:

You can create a gateway attachment to link separate VPCs and subnets to the newly created TGW. The two resources can be in the same or different AWS accounts. This example assumes that both VPCs are in the same AWS account.

- 1. Go to VPC Dashboard > Transit Gateways > Transit Gateway Attachments.
- 2. Click Create Transit Gateway Attachment.
- 3. From the *Transit Gateway ID* dropdown list, select the TGW that you created.
- 4. From the Attachment type dropdown list, select VPC.
- 5. From the VPC ID dropdown list, select the VPC that you want to attach to the TGW.
- 6. Under *Subnet IDs*, select the required subnet in the desired AZ.
- 7. Configure other fields as desired.
- 8. Click Create Attachment.
- **9.** Repeat the process for the remaining two VPC attachments. The security VPC is attached to the TGW, with only the TGW subnets in each AZ selected. This ensures that traffic can be routed seamlessly to and from the GWLB endpoint. You must attach each subnet/AZ to the TGW separately.

Route tables

This example has three VPCs and multiple subnets within each VPC:

- Customer A VPC (10.10.0.0/16) and Customer B VPC (10.20.0.0/16): place protected resources whose traffic must be analyzed here.
- Security VPC (10.90.0.0/16): place FortiGates here.

Application subnets are placed in different AZs.

East-west egress route table

Ensure that the east-west egress route table is configured as follows:

- Link the customer application subnets on VPC A and B to the security VPC via the TGW.
- Route traffic from customer A VPC so that it must go through the security VPC to reach the customer B VPC.

The following shows the customer A VPC route table. You must configure the customer B VPC route table similarly:

| Destination | Target | Status | Propagated |
|--------------|---|----------------|------------|
| 10.10.0.0/16 | local | active | No |
| 0.0.0/0 | igw-1 | IGW active | No |
| 10.20.0.0/16 | tgw-Lean CustomerB VPC acc Transit Gateway | ess via active | No |

Ensure that the TGW is attached to the designated TGW subnet in each AZ of the security VPC. Designated TGW VPCs allow you to configure forward and reverse routes to and from the FortiGate without causing routing loops. The following shows the TGW subnet route table for the forward route:

| Destination | Target | Status | Propagated |
|-----------------------------|-------------------|--------|------------|
| 10.90.0.0/16 | local | active | No |
| 10.10.0/16 Customer A VPC | vpce | active | No |
| 10.20.0.0/16 Customer B VPC | vpce-Security VPC | active | No |



An ideal configuration would have multiple GWLB endpoints in each AZ and selectively route traffic for high availability. Due to the way routes are configured on AWS, you can configure a single GWLB endpoint for multiple FortiGates.

The following shows the GWLB endpoint subnet route table for the reverse route:

| Destination | Target | Status | Propagated |
|-----------------------------|--------|--------|------------|
| 10.90.0.0/16 | local | active | No |
| 10.10.0.0/16 Customer A VPC | tgw- | active | No |
| 10.20.0.0/16 Customer B VPC | tgw- | active | No |

Configuring TGW route tables

Since traffic from customer VPC A and customer VPC B must be routed via the security subnet and cannot be forward directly, you must configure the following on the TGW route table for east-west traffic.

To configure TGW route tables:

- 1. Go to VPC Dashboard > Transit Gateways > Transit Gateway Route Tables.
- 2. Delete the automatically generated route table and its associations. You will create two new TGW route tables.
- 3. Create the TGW default route table:
 - a. On the Associations tab, associate the route table with Customer A and Customer B VPCs.
 - b. On the Propagations tab, propagate the route table to the security VPC.
 - c. On the Routes tab, add a default route to send all traffic to the security VPC.
- 4. Create the east-west route table:
 - a. On the Associations tab, associate the route table with the security VPC.
 - b. On the Propagations tab, propagate the route table to Customer A and Customer B VPCs.
 - c. On the Routes tab, define customer A and B VPC routes.

Post-deployment configuration

You must create a Geneve interface on the FortiGate to handle traffic between the FortiGate and GWLB.

To create the Geneve interface:

- 1. Go to EC2 Dashboard > Network & Security > Network Interfaces. Copy the Primary private IPv4 address value for the GWLB interface created in the security VPC.
- 2. This example creates separate VDOMs via the split VDOM feature to handle traffic from the application VPC. Enable probe response on port 2 on both FortiGate instances. This allows LB health check to function:

```
config system global
  config system interface
   edit "port2"
     set vdom "FG-traffic"
     set alias private
     set mode dhcp
     set allowaccess ping https ssh fgfm probe-response
     set defaultgw disable
     next
end
```

end

end

3. Create Geneve interfaces:

```
config vdom
```

```
edit "FG-traffic"
    config system geneve
    edit "awsgeneve"
        set interface "port2"
        set type ppp
        set remote-ip <GWLB_interface_ip (from step 1)>
        next
    end
next
```

4. Setting a higher priority on static routes for Geneve interfaces is recommended to avoid unintended functionality: config router static

```
edit 2
set priority 100
set device "awsgeneve"
next
end
```

5. In a scenario where the load balancer is in a different subnet than the FortiGate interface, configure the following static route to avoid health check failures:

```
config router static
  edit 3
    set device port2
    set dst <loadbal_subnet>
    set gateway <local_gateway>
    next
end
```

To configure egress routes:

If the current VDOM has multiple interfaces, you must add egress routes to ensure that traffic entering through the Geneve interfaces egress through the same interface.

```
config router policy
  edit 1
    set input-device "awsgeneve"
    set src "0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0"
```

```
set dst "10.10.2.0/255.255.254.0"
set output-device "awsgeneve"
next
end
```

Validating the configuration

Since traffic between the Internet and the application EC2 instance flows through the FortiGate Geneve interface, this example creates a FortiOS firewall policy that allows communication from the Geneve interface to the Geneve interface. The following shows an example policy.



This policy facilitates easy debugging. You should not configure this policy in a production environment.

To configure the policy:

```
config firewall policy
 edit 1
    set name "test_policy"
    set srcintf "az2"
    set dstintf "az2"
    set srcaddr "all"
    set dstaddr "all"
    set action accept
    set schedule "always"
    set service "ALL"
    next
end
```

To run a packet sniffer on the Geneve interface created to handle GWLB traffic:

In this example, the VDOM name is FG-traffic. When multiple VDOM mode (available only on BYOL instances) is enabled, substitute the name of your VDOM here for FG-traffic.

1. Run a packet sniffer:

```
config vdom
edit FG-traffic
diagnose sniffer packet awsgeneve
```

2. While the packet capture is running, attempt to access/ping a resource in customer B VPC from a resource in customer A VPC. The ping should succeed. The following shows the FortiGate packet capture for this access attempt:



Change log

| Date | Change Description |
|------------|--|
| 2020-03-31 | Initial release. |
| 2020-04-03 | Updated Creating an address using the GUI and Creating an address using the CLI. |
| 2020-04-06 | Added Configuring FortiGate-VM load balancer using dynamic address objects on page 174. |
| 2020-05-05 | Updated Creating a support account on page 12. |
| 2020-05-13 | Added Migrating a FortiGate-VM instance between license types on page 14. Updated Order types on page 11 and Creating a support account on page 12. |
| 2020-05-15 | Updated Order types on page 11. |
| 2020-05-21 | Updated Launching the instance with shared FortiGate-VM AMI on page 32. |
| 2020-06-18 | Added SD-WAN cloud on-ramp on page 185. Updated Deploying FortiGate-VM active-passive HA AWS between multiple zones manually with Transit Gateway integration on page 139 subtopics. |
| 2020-07-02 | Updated Deploying auto scaling on AWS on page 39. |
| 2020-07-09 | Added To configure a VDOM exception: on page 138. |
| 2020-08-04 | Added Deploying FortiGate-VM using Terraform on page 155. |
| 2020-09-21 | Updated Deploying auto scaling on AWS on page 39. Added Hybrid licensing support for deployments with Transit Gateway integration. |
| 2020-10-09 | Updated diagrams in Deploying auto scaling on AWS on page 39. |
| 2020-10-30 | Updated To configure the FortiGate-VM: on page 175. |
| 2020-12-04 | Updated Deploying auto scaling on AWS on page 39. Added support for FortiOS 6.4.3. |
| 2020-12-08 | Updated Order types on page 11. |
| 2020-12-11 | Updated Creating a support account on page 12. |
| 2021-02-04 | Updated Deploying auto scaling on AWS on page 39. Added support for FortiOS 6.4.4. FortiAnalyzer can now be integrated into the deployment. |
| 2021-02-17 | Updated Deploying auto scaling on AWS on page 39. For details, refer to the FortiGate Autoscale for AWS document history on page 95. |
| 2021-02-18 | Updated SDN connector integration with AWS on page 156. |
| 2021-02-22 | Added Security inspection with Gateway Load Balancer integration on page 186. |
| 2021-03-18 | Updated Post-deployment configuration on page 189 and Post-deployment configuration on page 196. |

Change log

| Date | Change Description | |
|------------|--|--|
| 2021-07-20 | Updated Deploying auto scaling on AWS on page 39. Added Requirements when using an existing VPC on page 42 | |
| 2021-07-26 | Updated Deploying auto scaling on AWS on page 39. Added support for FortiOS 6.2.5, FortiOS 6.4.6, FortiOS 7.0.0, and FortiOS 7.0.1. Removed support for FortiOS 6.2.3 and FortiOS 6.4.4. Added support for FortiAnalyzer 6.4.6. Removed support for FortiAnalyzer 6.2.5 and FortiAnalyzer 6.4.4. | |
| 2021-09-08 | Updated the CFT parameters on page 50 | |
| 2022-03-23 | Updated: Creating VPCs and subnets on page 140 Creating a Transit Gateway and related resources on page 141 Creating VPC route tables on page 147 Configuring the FortiGate-VMs on page 151 Updating the route table and adding an IAM policy on page 152 | |
| 2022-04-08 | Added Upgrading the deployment on page 91. | |





Copyright© 2022 Fortinet, Inc. All rights reserved. Fortinet®, FortiGate®, FortiCare® and FortiGuard®, and certain other marks are registered trademarks of Fortinet, Inc., in the U.S. and other jurisdictions, and other Fortinet names herein may also be registered and/or common law trademarks of Fortinet. All other product or company names may be trademarks of their respective owners. Performance and other metrics contained herein were attained in internal lab tests under ideal conditions, and actual performance and other results may vary. Network variables, different network environments and other conditions may affect performance results. Nothing herein represents any binding commitment by Fortinet, and Fortinet disclaims all warranties, whether express or implied, except to the extent Fortinet enters a binding written contract, signed by Fortinet's General Counsel, with a purchaser that expressly warrants that the identified product will perform according to certain expressly-identified performance metrics expressly identified in such binding written contract shall be binding on Fortinet. For absolute clarity, any such warranty will be limited to performance in the same ideal conditions as in Fortinet's internal lab tests. In no event does Fortinet make any commitment related to future deliverables, features or development, and circumstances may change such that any forward-looking statements herein are not accurate. Fortinet disclaims in full any covenants, representations, and guarantees pursuant hereto, whether express or implied. Fortinet reserves the right to change, modify, transfer, or otherwise revise this publication without notice, and the most current version of the publication shall be applicable.